

PCT

**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION**  
International Bureau



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :  C07D 495/04, 487/04, 471/04, A61K 31/55, C07D 513/04 // (C07D 495/04, 333:00, 223:00) (C07D 487/04, 237:00, 223:00) (C07D 471/04, 223:00, 221:00) (C07D 513/04, 281:00, 221:00)		A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 96/22294</b>		
			(43) International Publication Date: <b>25 July 1996 (25.07.96)</b>		
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US96/01096</b>		(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AU, BB, BG, BR, CA, CN, CZ, EE, FI, GE, HU, IS, JP, KG, KP, KR, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MX, NO, NZ, PL, RO, SG, SI, SK, TR, TT, UA, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG), Eurasian patent (AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).			
(22) International Filing Date: <b>16 January 1996 (16.01.96)</b>					
(30) Priority Data: 08/373,839 17 January 1995 (17.01.95) US					
(71) Applicant: AMERICAN CYANAMID COMPANY [US/US]; Five Giraldia Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US).		Published <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>			
(72) Inventors: ALBRIGHT, Jay, Donald; 5 Clifford Court, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US). DELOS SANTOS, Efren, Guillermo; 38 Birchwood Terrace, Nanuet, NY 10954 (US).					
(74) Agents: ALICE, Ronald, W.; American Home Products Corporation, Five Giraldia Farms, Madison, NJ 07940-0874 (US) et al.					
<b>(54) Title: BICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES AS VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS</b>					
<b>(57) Abstract</b>					
This invention relates to new bicyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of formula (I) which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.					

***FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY***

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AM	Armenia	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
AT	Austria	GE	Georgia	MX	Mexico
AU	Australia	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BB	Barbados	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BE	Belgium	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BF	Burkina Faso	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BG	Bulgaria	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BJ	Benin	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BR	Brazil	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
BY	Belarus	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CA	Canada	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CF	Central African Republic	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CG	Congo	KZ	Kazakhstan	SG	Singapore
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LK	Sri Lanka	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LR	Liberia	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LT	Lithuania	SZ	Swaziland
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CZ	Czech Republic	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DK	Denmark	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
EE	Estonia	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	UG	Uganda
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	US	United States of America
FR	France	MR	Mauritania	UZ	Uzbekistan
GA	Gabon			VN	Viet Nam

## BICYCLIC BENZAZEPINE DERIVATIVES AS VASOPRESSIN ANTAGONISTS

5

### 1. Field of the Invention

This invention relates to new bicyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists which are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

15 2. Background of the Invention

Vasopressin is released from the posterior pituitary either in response to increased plasma osmolarity detected by brain osmoreceptors or decreased blood volume and blood pressure sensed by low-pressure 20 volume receptors and arterial baroreceptors. The hormone exerts its action through two well defined receptor subtypes: vascular V<sub>1</sub> and renal epithelial V<sub>2</sub> receptors. Vasopressin-induced antidiuresis, mediated by renal epithelial V<sub>2</sub> receptors, helps to maintain normal plasma 25 osmolarity, blood volume and blood pressure.

Vasopressin is involved in some cases of congestive heart failure where peripheral resistance is increased. V<sub>1</sub> antagonists may decrease systemic vascular resistance, increase cardiac output and prevent 30 vasopressin induced coronary vasoconstriction. Thus, in conditions with vasopressin induce increases in total peripheral resistance and altered local blood flow, V<sub>1</sub>-antagonists may be therapeutic agents. V<sub>1</sub> antagonists may decrease blood pressure, induced hypotensive effects 35 and thus be therapeutically useful in treatment of some types of hypertension.

-2-

The blockage of V<sub>2</sub> receptors is useful in treating diseases characterized by excess renal reabsorption of free water. Antidiuresis is regulated by the hypothalamic release of vasopressin (antidiuretic 5 hormone) which binds to specific receptors on renal collecting tubule cells. This binding stimulates adenylyl cyclase and promotes the cAMP-mediated incorporation of water pores into the luminal surface of these cells. V<sub>2</sub> antagonists may correct the fluid 10 retention in congestive heart failure, liver cirrhosis, nephritic syndrome, central nervous system injuries, lung disease and hyponatremia.

Elevated vasopressin levels occur in congestive heart failure which is more common in older patients with 15 chronic heart failure. In patients with hyponatremic congestive heart failure and elevated vasopressin levels, a V<sub>2</sub> antagonist may be beneficial in promoting free water excretion by antagonizing the action of antidiuretic hormone. On the basis of biochemical and pharmacological 20 effects of the hormone, antagonists of vasopressin are expected to be therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic 25 syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

The following prior art references describe peptide vasopressin antagonists: M. Manning et al., 30 J. Med. Chem., 35, 382(1992); M. Manning et al., J. Med. Chem., 35, 3895(1992); H. Gavras and B. Lammek, U.S. Patent 5,070,187 (1991); M. Manning and W.H. Sawyer, U.S. Patent 5,055,448(1991) F.E. Ali, U.S. Patent 4,766,108(1988); R.R. Ruffolo et al., Drug News and 35 Perspective, 4(4), 217, (May) (1991). P.D. Williams et al., have reported on potent hexapeptide oxytocin

-3-

antagonists [*J. Med. Chem.*, **35**, 3905(1992)] which also exhibit weak vasopressin antagonist activity in binding to V<sub>1</sub> and V<sub>2</sub> receptors. Peptide vasopressin antagonists suffer from a lack of oral activity and many of these 5 peptides are not selective antagonists since they also exhibit partial agonist activity.

Non-peptide vasopressin antagonists have recently been disclosed, Y. Yamamura et al., *Science*, **252**, 579(1991); Y. Yamamura et al., *Br. J. Pharmacol.*, **105**, 787(1992); Ogawa et al., (Otsuka Pharm Co., LTD.) EP 0514667-A1; JP 04154765-A; EPO 382185-A2; WO9105549 and U.S.5,258,510; WO 9404525 Yamanouchi Pharm.Co.,Ltd., WO 9420473; WO 9412476; WO 9414796; Fujisawa Co. Ltd., EP 620216-A1 Ogawa et al, (Otsuka Pharm. Co.) EP 470514A 15 disclose carbostyryl derivatives and pharmaceutical compositions containing the same. Non-peptide oxytocin and vasopressin antagonist have been disclosed by Merck and Co.; M.G. Bock and P.D. Williams, EP 0533242A; M.G. Bock et al., EP 0533244A; J.M. Erb, D.F. Verber, P.D. Williams, EP 0533240A; K. Gilbert et al., EP 0533243A. 20

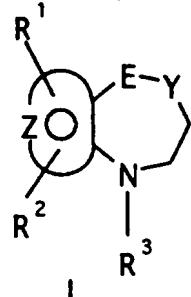
Premature birth can cause infant health problems and mortality and a key mediator in the mechanism of labor is the peptide hormone oxytocin. On the basis of the pharmacological action of oxytocin, 25 antagonists of this hormone are useful in the prevention of preterm labor, B.E. Evans et al., *J. Med. Chem.* **35**, 3919(1992), *J. Med. Chem.*, **36**, 3993(1993) and references therein. The compounds of this invention are antagonists of the peptide hormone oxytocin and are useful in the 30 control of premature birth.

The present invention relates to novel tricyclic derivatives which exhibit antagonist activity at V<sub>1</sub> and/or V<sub>2</sub> receptors and exhibit *in vivo* vasopressin antagonist activity. The compounds also exhibit 35 antagonist activity at oxytocin receptors.

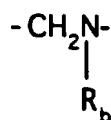
-4-

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

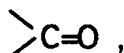
This invention relates to new compounds  
 5 selected from those of the general Formula I:



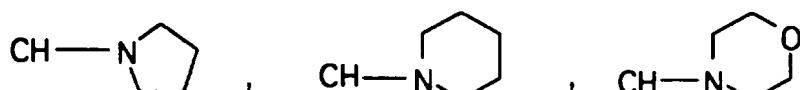
wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,



-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the  
 10 moieties:



-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),  
 -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-  
 C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



15 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>  
 -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-  
 C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-  
 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-5-



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), -NCO-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

and the moiety:



5

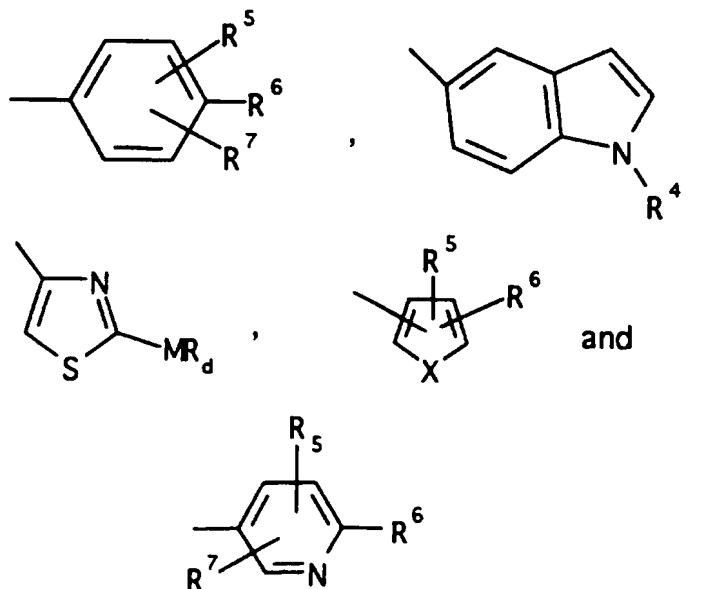
represents: (1) a fused unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substitutents selected from ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkylamino; (2) a fused

10 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) hetero-cyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic

15 (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy;

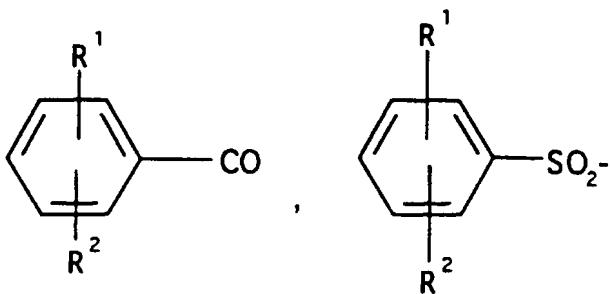
20  $R^3$  is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

- 6 -



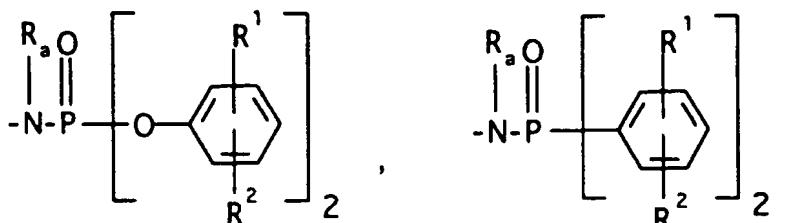
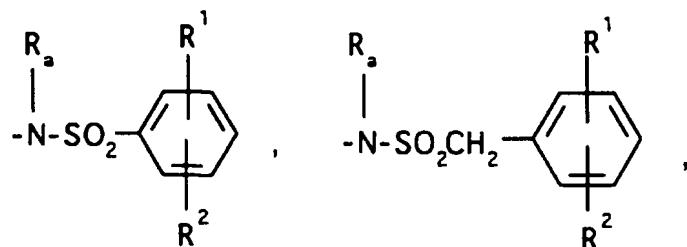
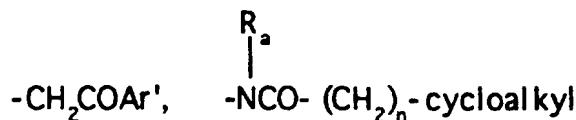
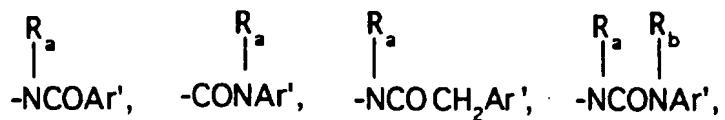
wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>;  
 R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-  
 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

5



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected  
 10 from (a) moieties of the formulae:

- 7 -



$\begin{array}{c} R_a O \\ | \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

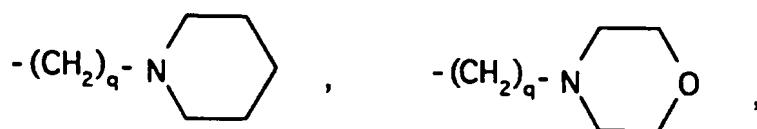
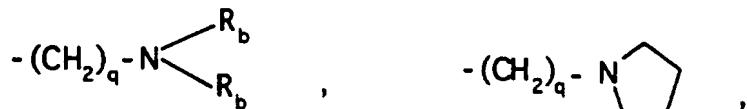
$\begin{array}{c} R_a O \\ | \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a O \\ | \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a O \\ | \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and R<sub>a</sub> is independently

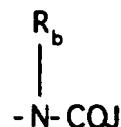
-8-

selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen,

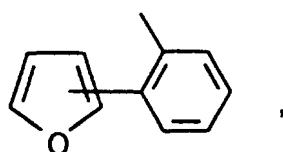
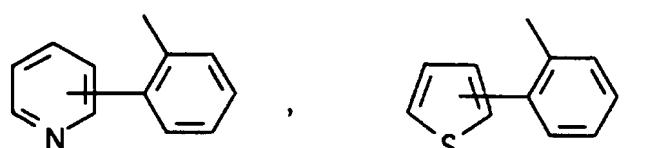
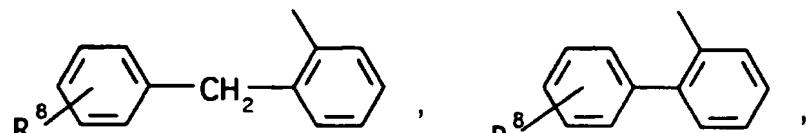
5 -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:



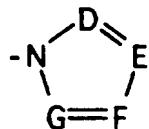
wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched,

10 O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



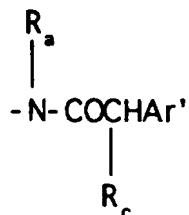
-9-

or  $-\text{CH}_2-\text{K}'$  wherein  $\text{K}'$  is  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

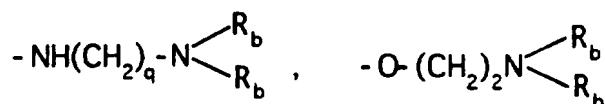
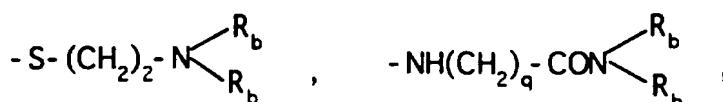
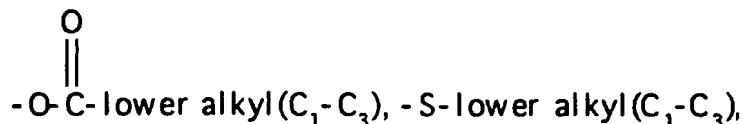


5 wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy,  $-\text{CO}$ -lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3$ ),  $\text{CHO}$ ,  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-\text{CO}_2$ -lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3$ ), and  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

10 (c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein  $\text{R}_c$  is selected from halogen,  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$  lower alkyl,  $-\text{O}$ -lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3$ ),  $\text{OH}$ ,



wherein  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

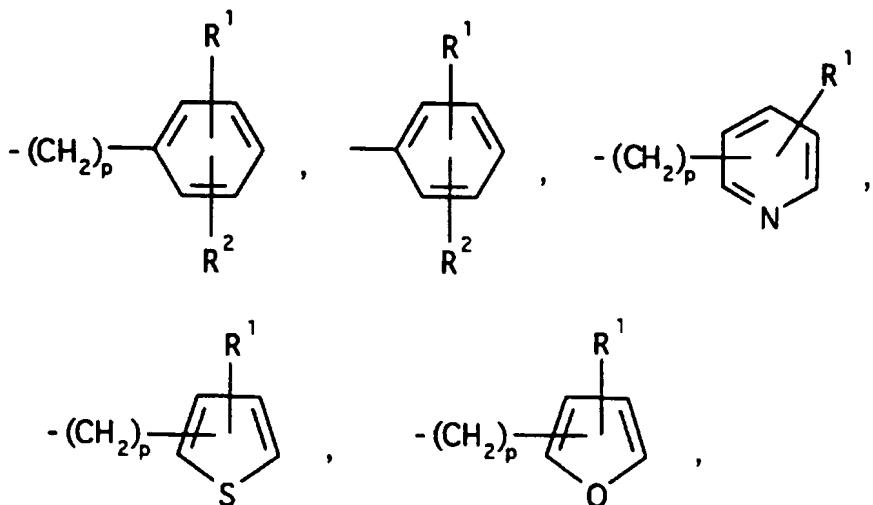
(d) a moiety of the formula:

-10-

-M-Rd

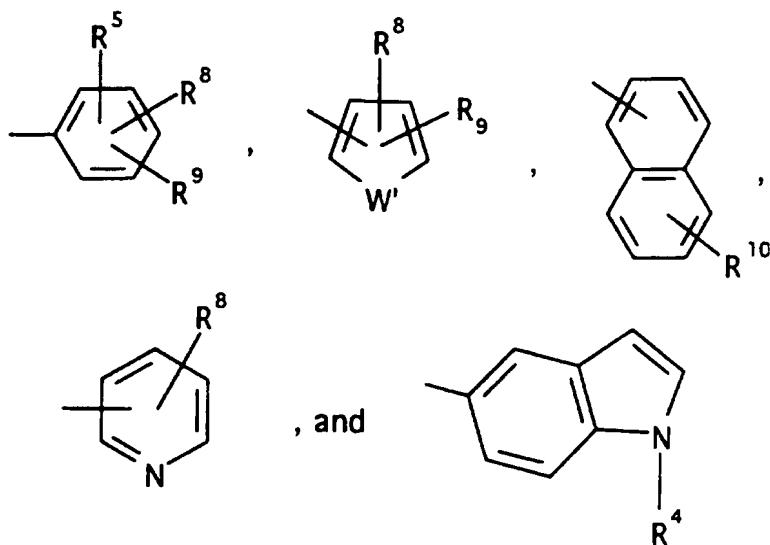
wherein Rd is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub> and the moiety -M-Rd wherein Rd is selected from the

5       moieties:



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bind or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

10       wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



-11-

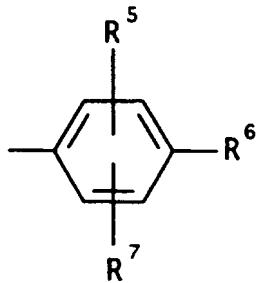
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Within the group of the compounds defined by Formula I, certain subgroups of compounds are broadly preferred. Broadly preferred are those compounds wherein R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:



and Ar is selected from the moiety:

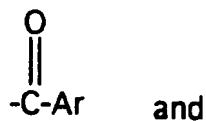


20

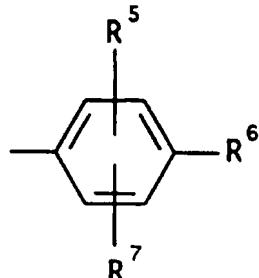
wherein R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup> and R<sup>7</sup> are as hereinbefore defined.

Especially preferred are compounds wherein R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:

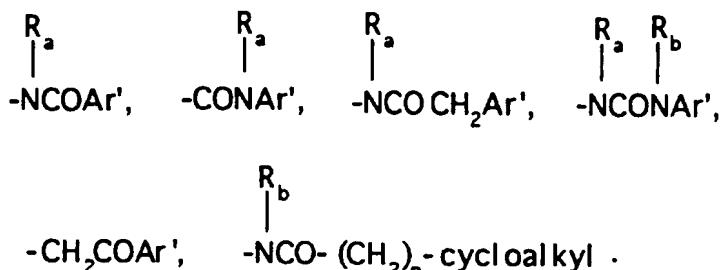
-12-



Ar is selected from the moiety:



R<sup>6</sup> is

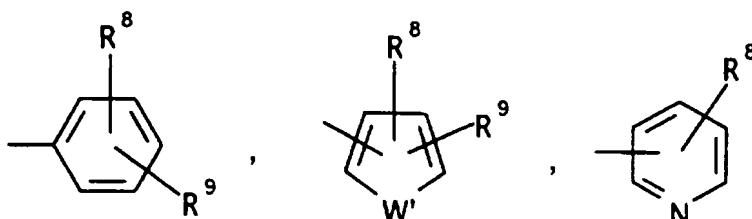


5

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as C<sub>3</sub> to C<sub>6</sub> cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl;

R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> as hereinbefore defined;

and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



10

wherein R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup> and W' are as hereinbefore defined.

Also especially preferred are compounds wherein Y is CH<sub>2</sub> and E in Formula I is -CH<sub>2</sub>, -CHOH, -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CHN[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub> and

-13-

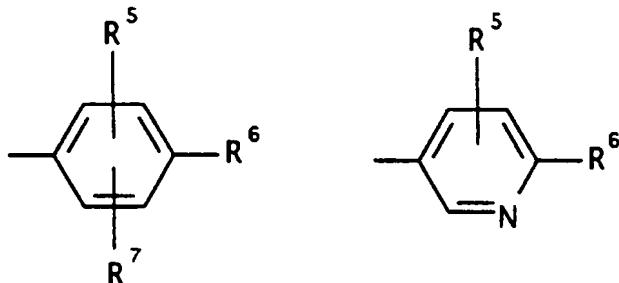
-CHO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

and R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are as hereinbefore defined.

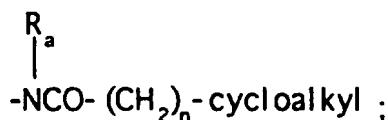
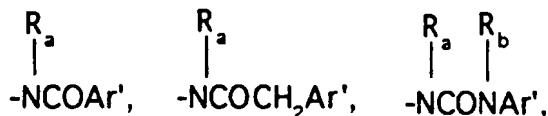
The most preferred of the compounds of Formula 5 I are those wherein Y is CH<sub>2</sub> and E is -CH<sub>2</sub>, -CHOH, -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHNH-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CHN[lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety



10 Ar is selected from the moieties:

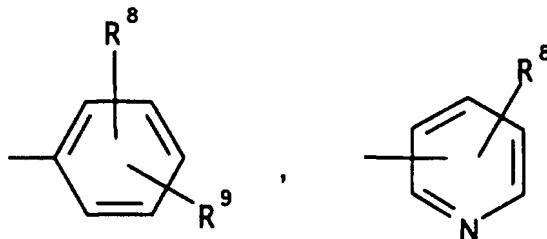


R<sup>6</sup> is



(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-cycloalkyl wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-15 C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>7</sup> are as hereinbefore defined; and Ar' is a moiety:

-14-



wherein R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are as previously defined.

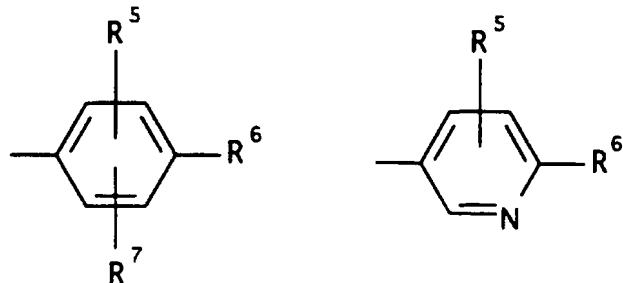
The most highly broadly preferred of the compounds of Formula I are those wherein Y is CH<sub>2</sub> and E 5 is -CH<sub>2</sub>, -CHOH, -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHNH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CHN[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), wherein the moiety:



10 is a fused unsubstituted or substituted thiophene, furan, pyrrole, pyrazole or pyridine ring; R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>4</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>7</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, and R<sup>9</sup> are as previously defined; R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:



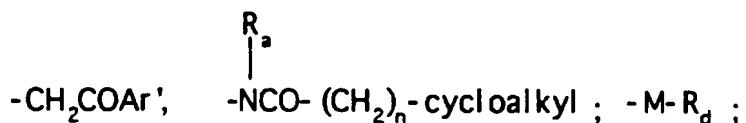
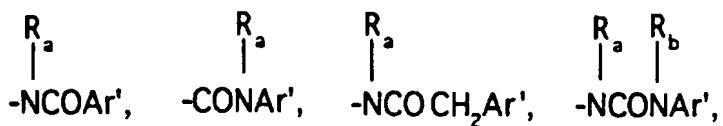
wherein Ar is:



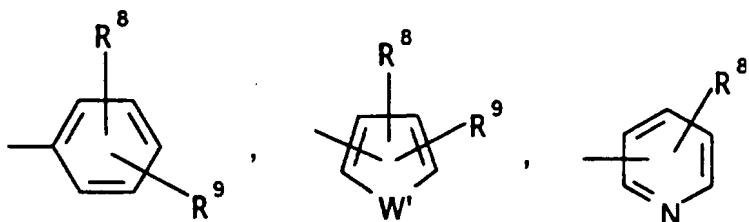
15

and R<sup>6</sup> is selected from the group

-15-

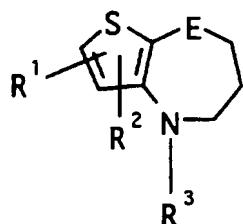


where Ar' is selected from the group



and W' and cycloalkyl are as previously described.

5 More particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:



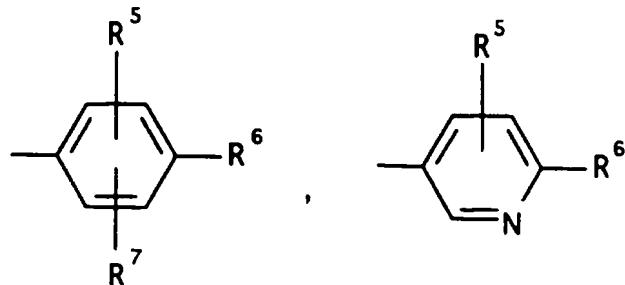
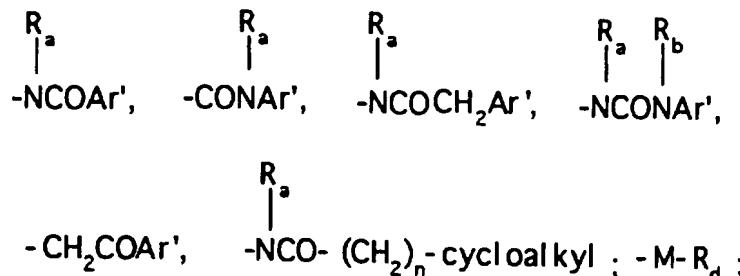
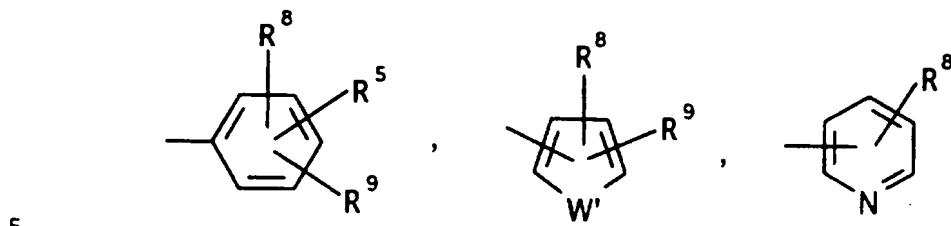
wherein E is selected from  $-\text{CH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CHOH}$ ,  $-\text{CHNH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CHNH}$ -lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),  $-\text{CHN}[\text{lower alkyl(C}_1\text{-C}_3\text{)}]_2$  and  $-\text{CHO}$  lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

10 R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:



wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:

-16-

 $R^6$  isand  $Ar'$  is selected from the moieties:wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ , cycloalkyl and  $W'$  are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of the formula:



10

wherein  $E$  is selected from  $-CH_2$ ,  $-CHOH$ ,  $-CHNH_2$ ,  $-CHNH-$

-17-

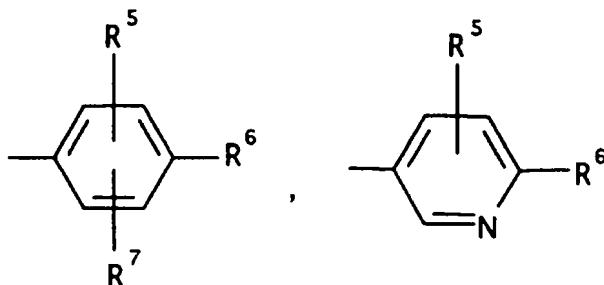
lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CHN[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub> and -CHO

lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

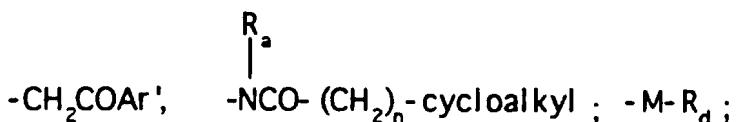
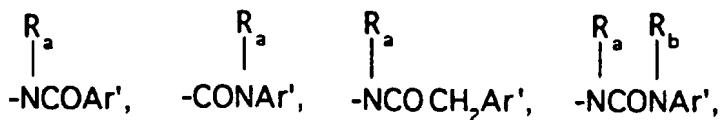
R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:



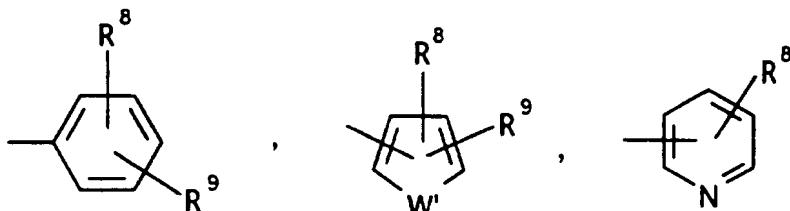
5 wherein Ar is selected from the moieties:



R<sup>6</sup> is



Ar' is selected from the moieties:

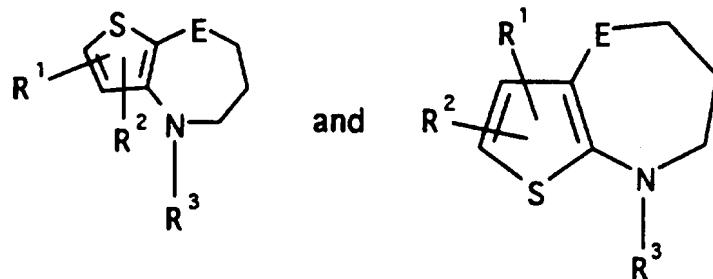


10

wherein R<sub>a</sub>, R<sub>b</sub>, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, R<sup>6</sup>, R<sup>8</sup>, R<sup>9</sup>, cycloalkyl and W' are as hereinbefore described.

More particularly preferred are compounds of the formulae:

-18-

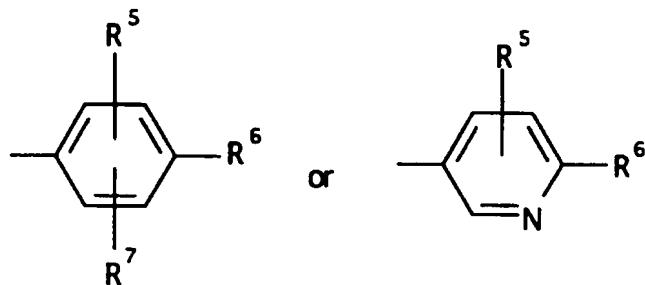


wherein E is selected from  $-\text{CH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CHOH}$ ,  $-\text{CHNH}_2$ ,  $-\text{CHNH}-$  lower alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ ),  $-\text{CHN}[\text{lower alkyl}(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)]_2$  and  $-\text{CHO}$  lower alkyl ( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ );

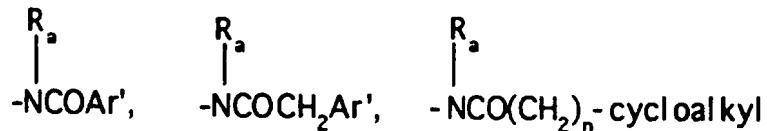
5 R<sup>3</sup> is the moiety:



wherein Ar is the moiety:



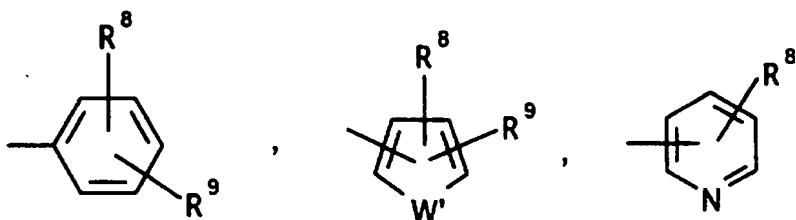
R<sup>6</sup> is



10

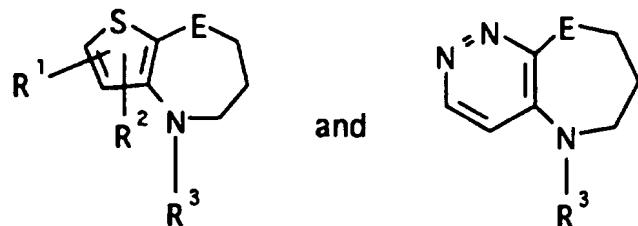
wherein R<sub>a</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen or  $-\text{CH}_3$ ; Ar' is selected from the moieties:

-19-



wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ ,  $R^9$ , and  $W'$  are as hereinbefore described.

Also particularly preferred are compounds of  
5 the formulae:



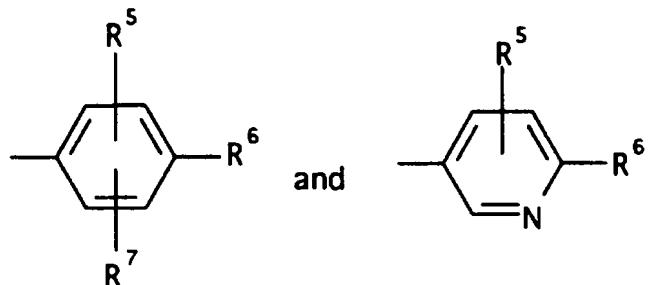
wherein  $E$  is selected from  $-CH_2$ ,  $-CHOH$ ,  $-CHNH_2$ ,  $-CHNH-$  lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CHN[$ lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ) $]_2$  and  $-CHO$  lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ );

10  $R^3$  is the moiety:



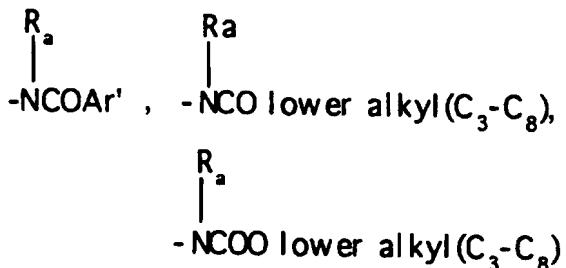
w

herein  $Ar$  is selected from the moieties:

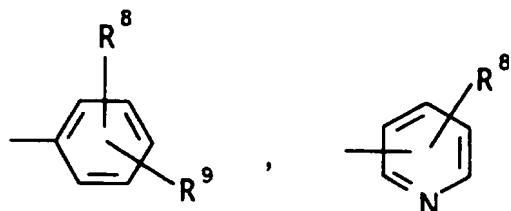


$R^6$  is

-20-



Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> and Ar' is selected from the moieties:



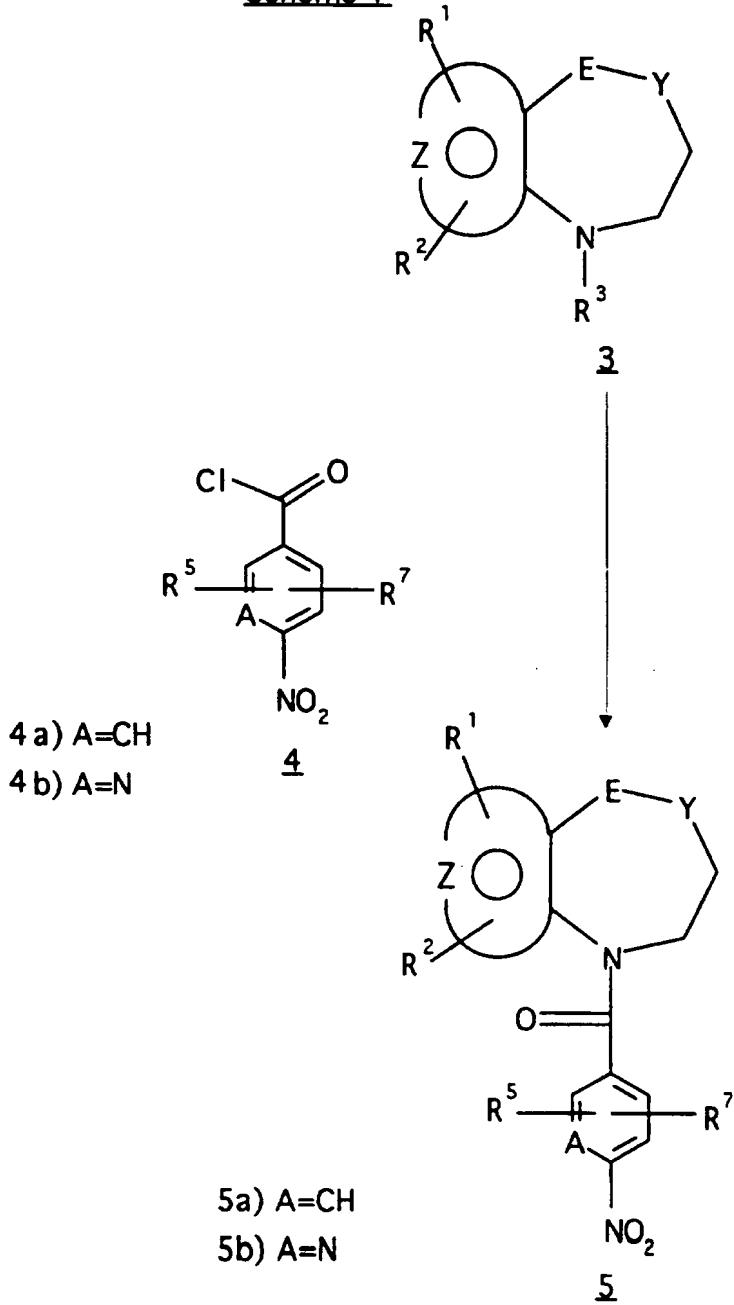
5 wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $R^8$ , and  $R^9$  are as hereinbefore  
defined.

Compounds of this invention may be prepared as shown in Scheme I by reaction of azepine derivatives of Formula 3 with a substituted or unsubstituted 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride 4a or a substituted or unsubstituted 6-nitronicotinoyl chloride 4b to give the intermediate 5a and 5b. Reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5 gives the 4-aminobenzoyl derivative 6a and the 6-amino-nicotinoyl derivative 6b. The reduction of the nitro group in intermediate 5 may be carried out under catalytic reduction conditions (hydrogen-Pd/C; Pd/C-hydrazine-ethanol) or under chemical reduction conditions (SnCl<sub>2</sub>-ethanol; Zn-acetic acid TiCl<sub>3</sub>) and related reduction conditions known in the art for converting a nitro group to an amino group. The conditions for conversion of the nitro group to the amino group are chosen on the basis of compatibility with the preservation of other functional groups in the molecule.

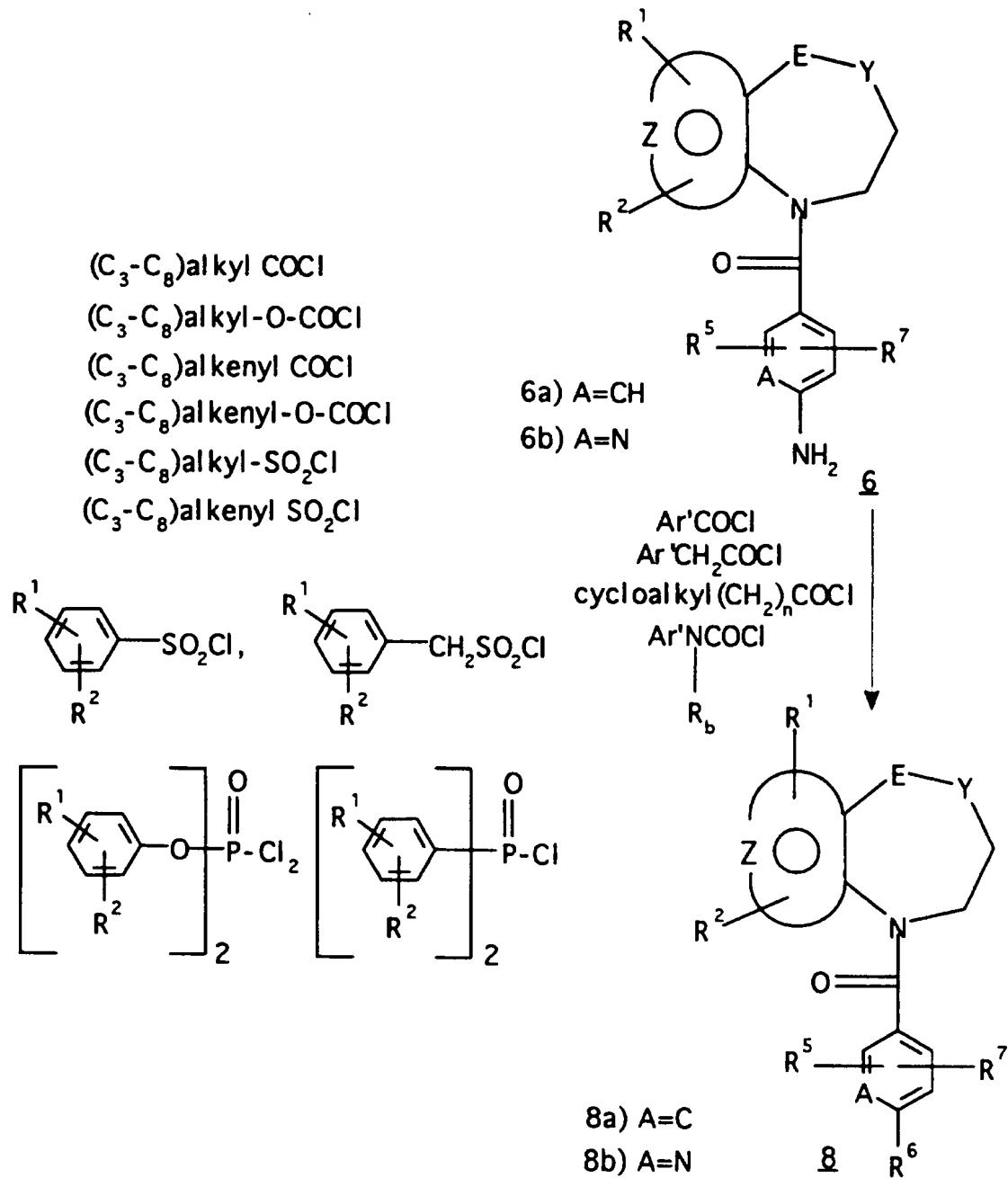
Reaction of compounds of Formula 6 with aroyl  
chloride or related activated aryl carboxylic acids in

-21-

solvents such as chloroform, dichloromethane, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine and diisopropyl-ethylamine or pyridine and the like, affords the compounds 8 vasopressin antagonists.

Scheme 1

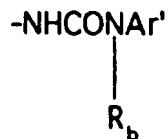
-22-

Scheme 1 (cont'd)

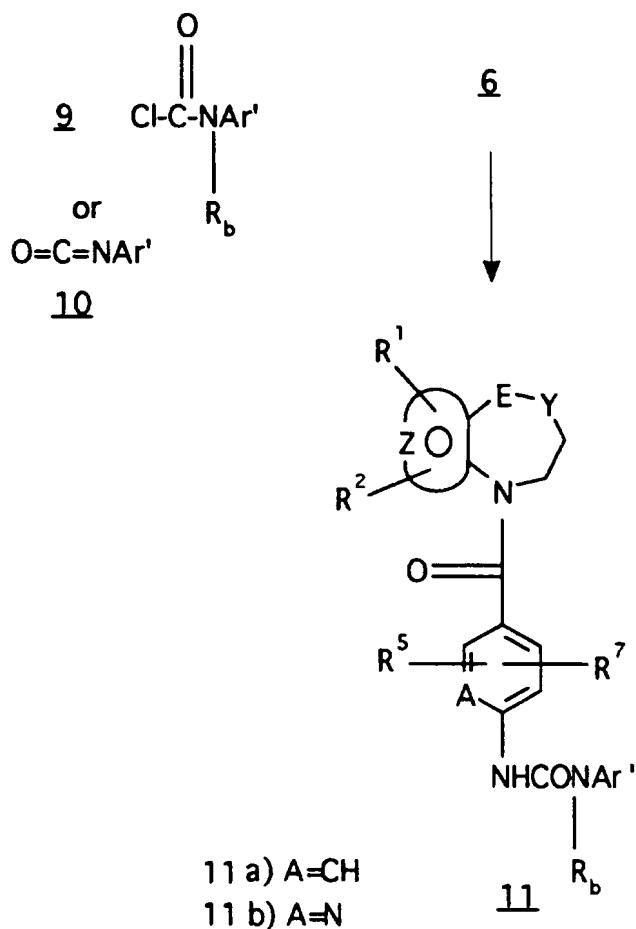
Reaction of bicyclic derivatives of Formula 6 with either a carbamoyl derivative 9 or a isocyanate

-23-

derivative 10 gives compounds (Scheme 2) of Formula 11 which are vasopressin antagonists of Formula I wherein R<sup>6</sup> is



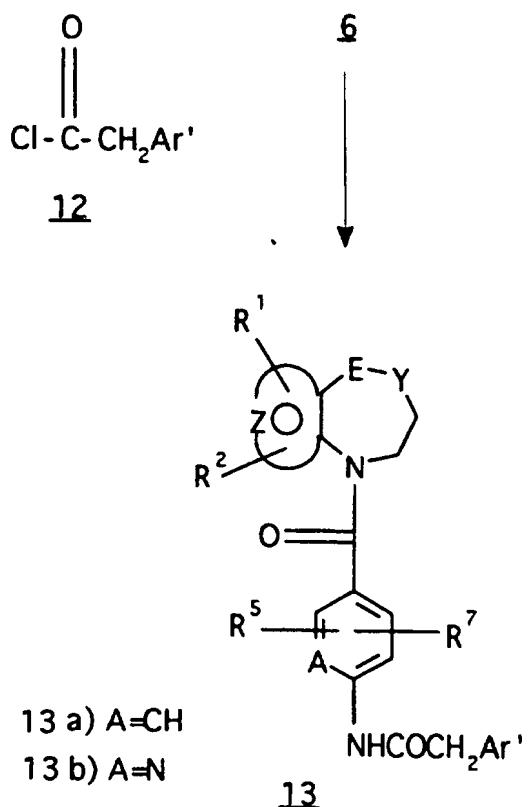
5

Scheme 2

-24-

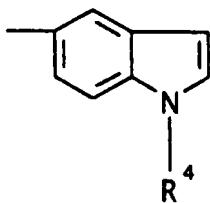
Reaction of bicyclic derivatives of Formula 6 with arylacetic acids, activated as the acid chlorides 12, anhydrides, mixed anhydrides or activated with known activating reagents, gives compounds 13 (Scheme 3).

5

Scheme 3

-25-

The compounds of Formula I wherein E, Y, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are as defined and the aryl of R<sup>3</sup> (-COAr) is



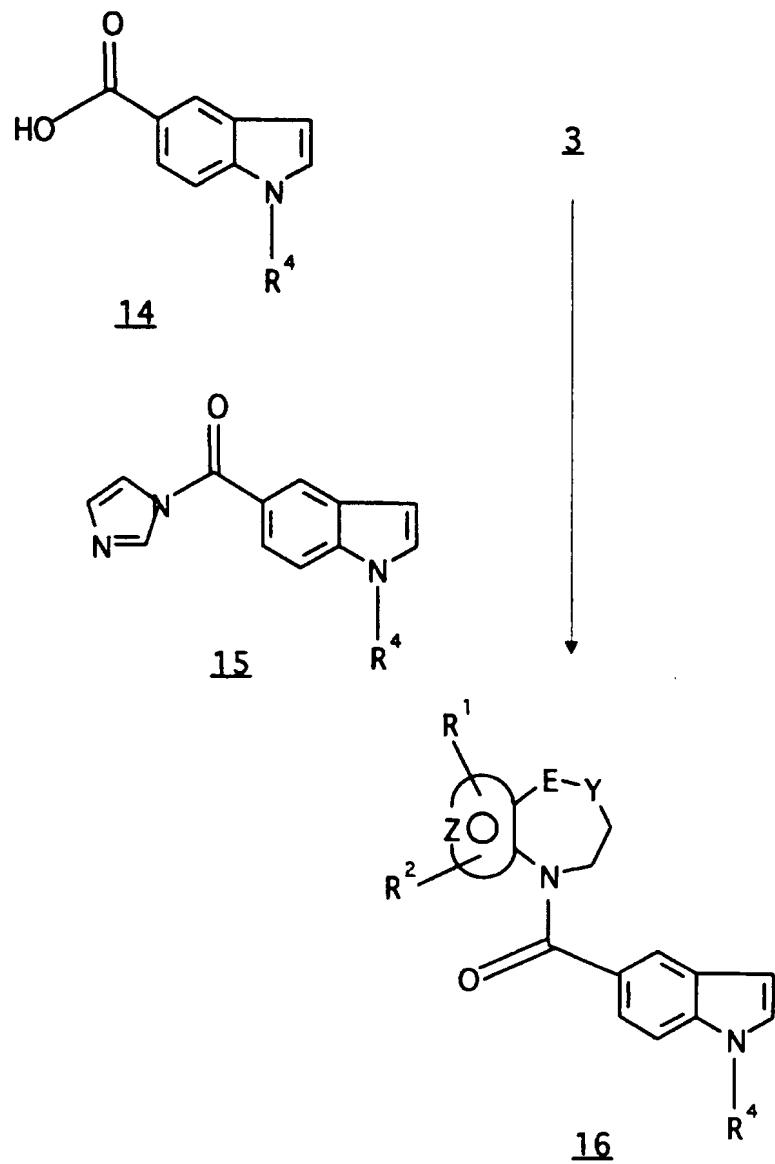
5 may be prepared, as shown in Scheme 4, by reacting an activated ester of the indole-5-carboxylic acids 14 with bicyclic derivatives 3a and 3b. The indole-5-carboxylic acids 14 may be activated by preparing the anhydride, a mixed anhydride or reacting with diethyl

10 cyanophosphonate, N,N-carbonyldiimidazole or related peptide coupling reagents. As an example, the derivative 15 may be prepared by the reaction of acid 14 and N,N-carbonyldiimidazole in tetrahydrofuran; the solvent is removed and the derivative reacted with 3 at 100°C to

15 120°C without a solvent. Alternatively, 3 may be reacted with 15 in a solvent such as toluene or xylene at reflux temperatures. The activating reagent for the indole acids 14 is chosen on the basis of its compatibility with the R<sup>4</sup> group and its reactivity with the

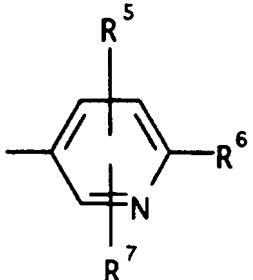
20 azepine derivative 3 to give the vasopressin antagonist 16.

-26-

Scheme 4

-27-

The compounds of Formula I wherein E, Y, R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, and R<sup>7</sup> are as defined and the R<sup>3</sup> (-COAr) aryl group is

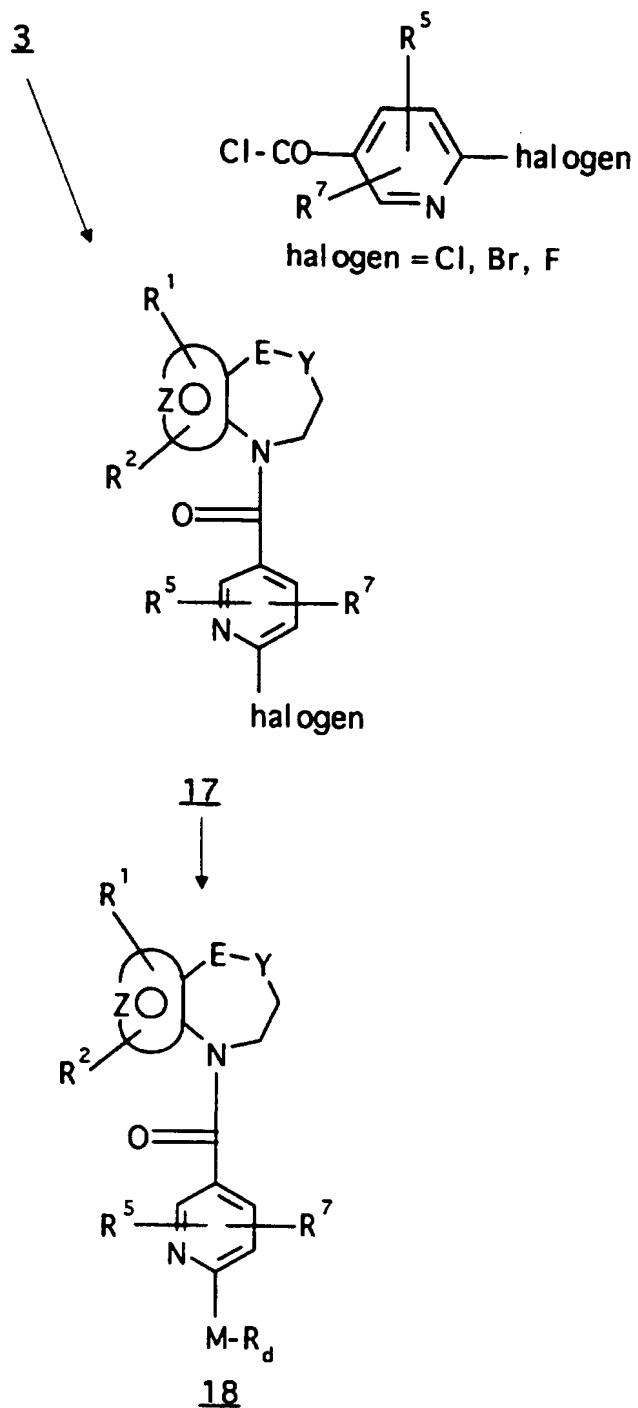


5   wherein R<sup>6</sup> is -M-Rd wherein M is O, S, NH, N-CH<sub>3</sub> and Rd is as previously defined may be prepared as shown in Scheme 5 by first converting the azepine derivatives 3 into the intermediate 17 and then reacting these nicotinolyl intermediates with derivatives of the formulae:

10   HM-Rd in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base such as N,N-diisopropylethylamine to give products 18. The best results are obtained in the displacement of the halogen in the nicotinolyl intermediates 17, when the halogen atom is a fluoro group. With nucleophilic amines (M=NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>) the reaction can be carried out with the 6-chloro, bromo or fluoro derivatives 17 in (1) the absence of a non-nucleophilic base; (2) in a non-nucleophilic solvent; or (3) with excess amine and no solvent. With derivatives HORd the 6-fluoro derivative 17 is required

15   20   for satisfactory conversion of 17 to 18.

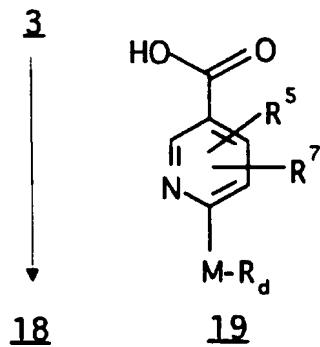
-28-

Scheme 5

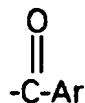
-29-

Alternatively, the products 18 may be prepared by first forming derivatives of the Formula 19 and then coupling these derivatives with the azepine compounds 3 (Scheme 6). The carboxylic acid intermediates are activated for coupling to the azepine compounds 3 by reaction with peptide coupling reagents, by conversion to the acid chlorides, anhydrides or mixed anhydrides.

Scheme 6



As an alternative method for synthesis of compounds of this invention as depicted in Formula I wherein  $R_a$ ,  $R_b$ ,  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$ ,  $R^5$ ,  $R^7$ ,  $A$ ,  $E$  and  $Y$  are as previously defined and  $R^3$  is



is the coupling of aryl carboxylic acids 20 with the azepine derivative 3. (Scheme 7)

The aryl carboxylic acids are activated for coupling by conversion to an acid chloride, bromide or anhydride or by first reacting with an activating reagent such as N,N-dicyclo carbodiimide, diethyl cyano-phosphonate and related "peptide type" activating

-30-

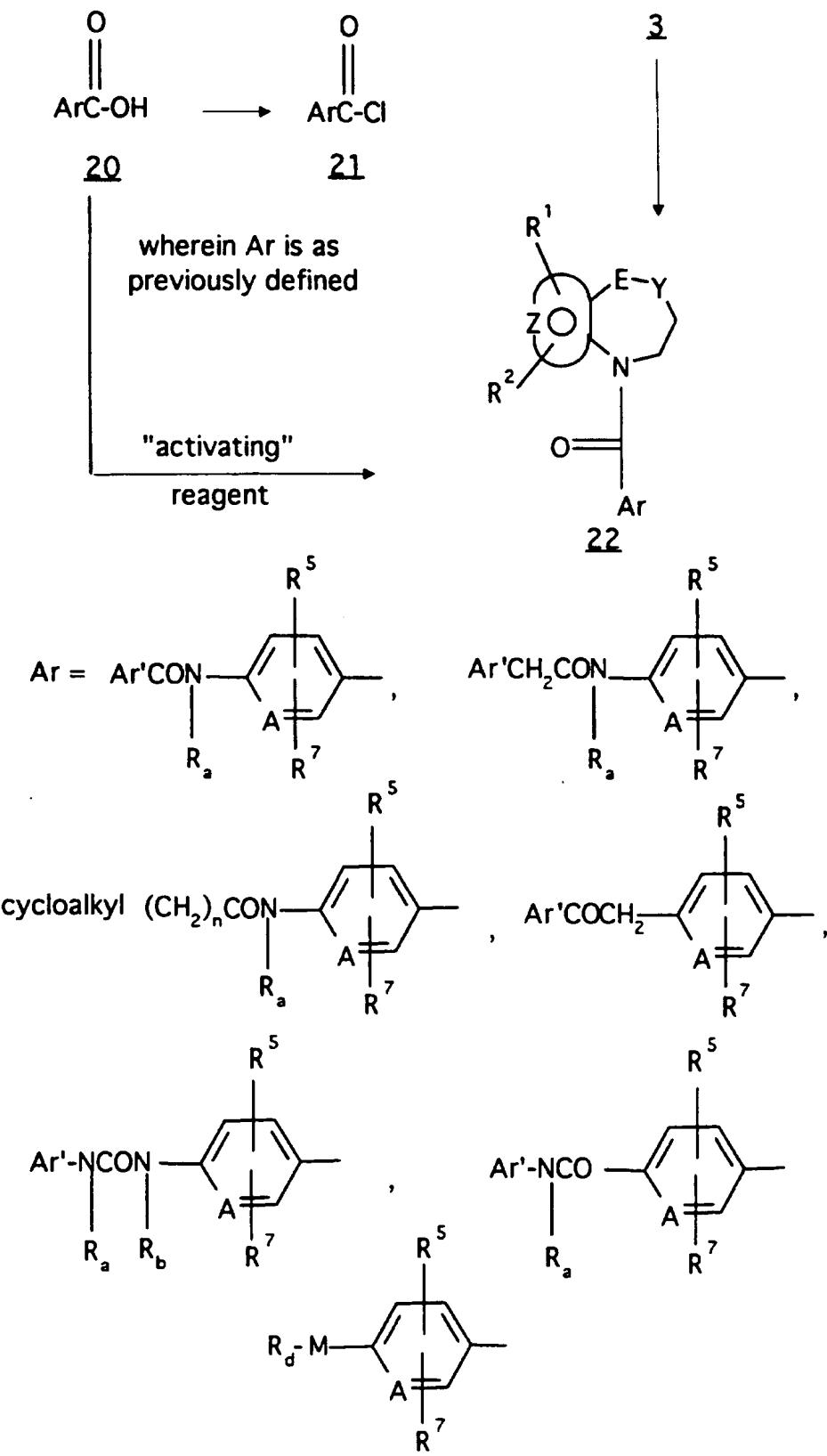
reagents. The method of activating the acids 20 for coupling to the azepine derivative 3 is chosen on the basis of compatibility with other substituent groups in the molecule. The method of choice is the conversion of 5 the aryl carboxylic acid 20 to the corresponding aroyl chloride. The aryl acid chlorides 21 may be prepared by standard procedures known in the art, such as reaction with thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride and the like. The coupling reaction is carried out in solvents such as 10 halogenated hydrocarbons, toluene, xylene, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane in the presence of pyridine or tertiary bases such as triethylamine and the like (Scheme 7). Alternatively, the aroyl chlorides, prepared from the 15 aryl carboxylic acids 20 may be reacted with derivatives 3 in pyridine with or without 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine to give derivatives 22.

In general, when the aryl carboxylic acids are activated with *N,N*-carbonyldiimidazole and other "peptide type" activating reagents, higher temperatures are 20 required than when the aroyl chlorides are used. The reaction may be carried out in a higher boiling solvent xylene or without a solvent (100°C to 150°C).

The activation of aryl carboxylic by conversion to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride or 25 oxalyl chloride is preferred since the more reactive aroyl chlorides give better yields of product. The synthesis of selected examples is illustrated in Scheme 7.

- 31 -

Scheme 7

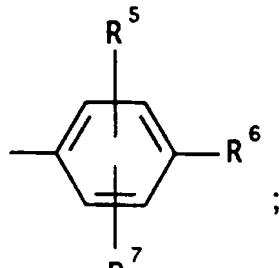


-32-

The synthesis of compounds of Formula I wherein  $R^3$  is

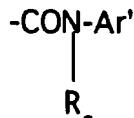


the Ar group is



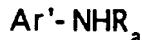
5

$\mathbb{R}^6$  is



and where Ar' is as previously defined is carried out according to Scheme 8. The azepine compounds are reacted with mono-methyl terephthalyl chloride 23 (prepared from mono-methyl terephthalate and thionyl chloride) in the presence of a tertiary base such as triethylamine in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, toluene and the like to give derivatives 24.

These ester intermediates 24 are hydrolyzed with two to ten equivalents of an alkaline hydroxide such as potassium or sodium hydroxide in aqueous methanol or ethanol to give the corresponding acids after acidification and workup. The free acids are converted to the acid chlorides with thionyl chloride and these acid chloride intermediates 25, reacted with aminoaryl derivatives of formula:

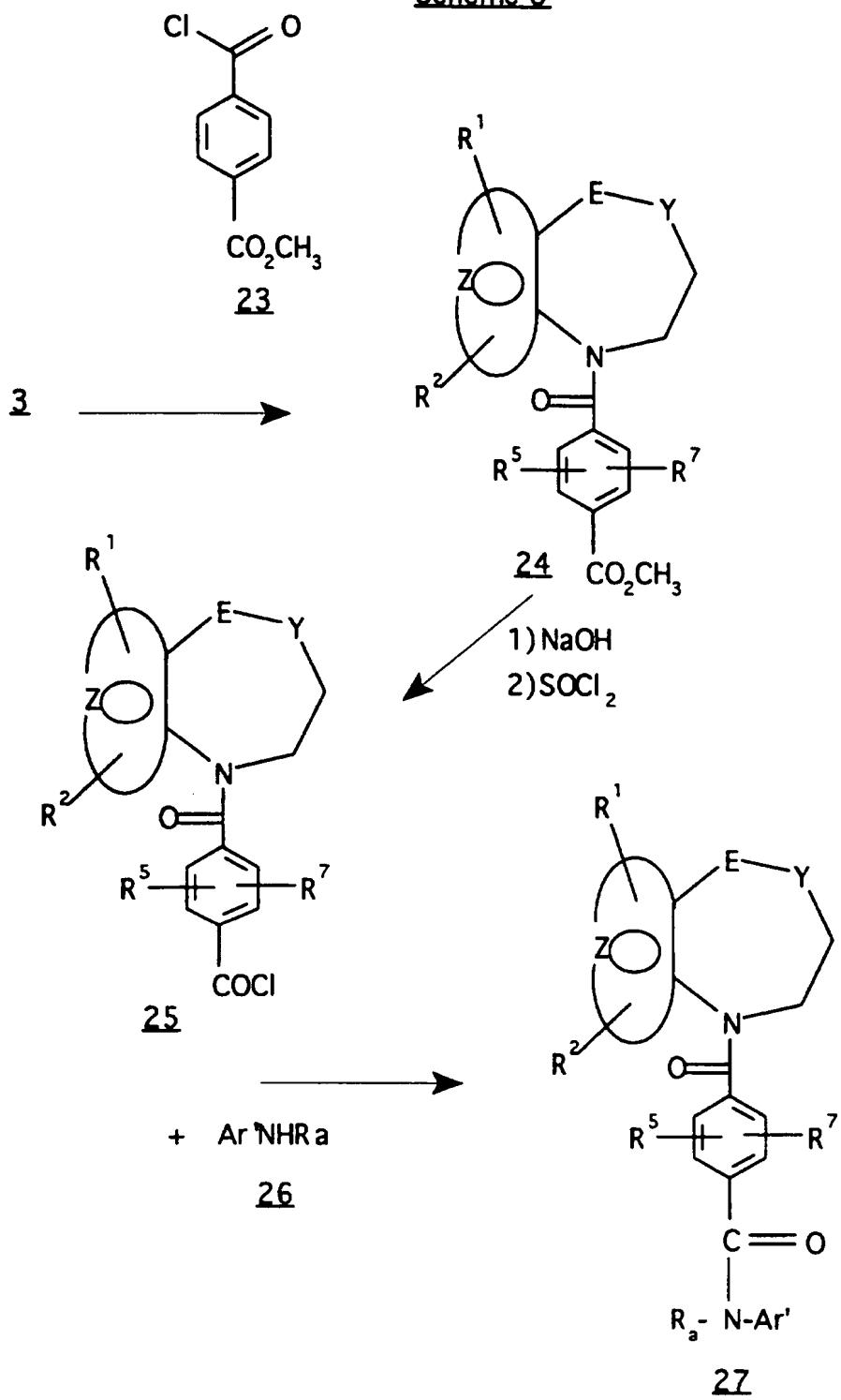


26

wherein Ar' and Ra are as previously defined to give  
25 compounds 27.

-33-

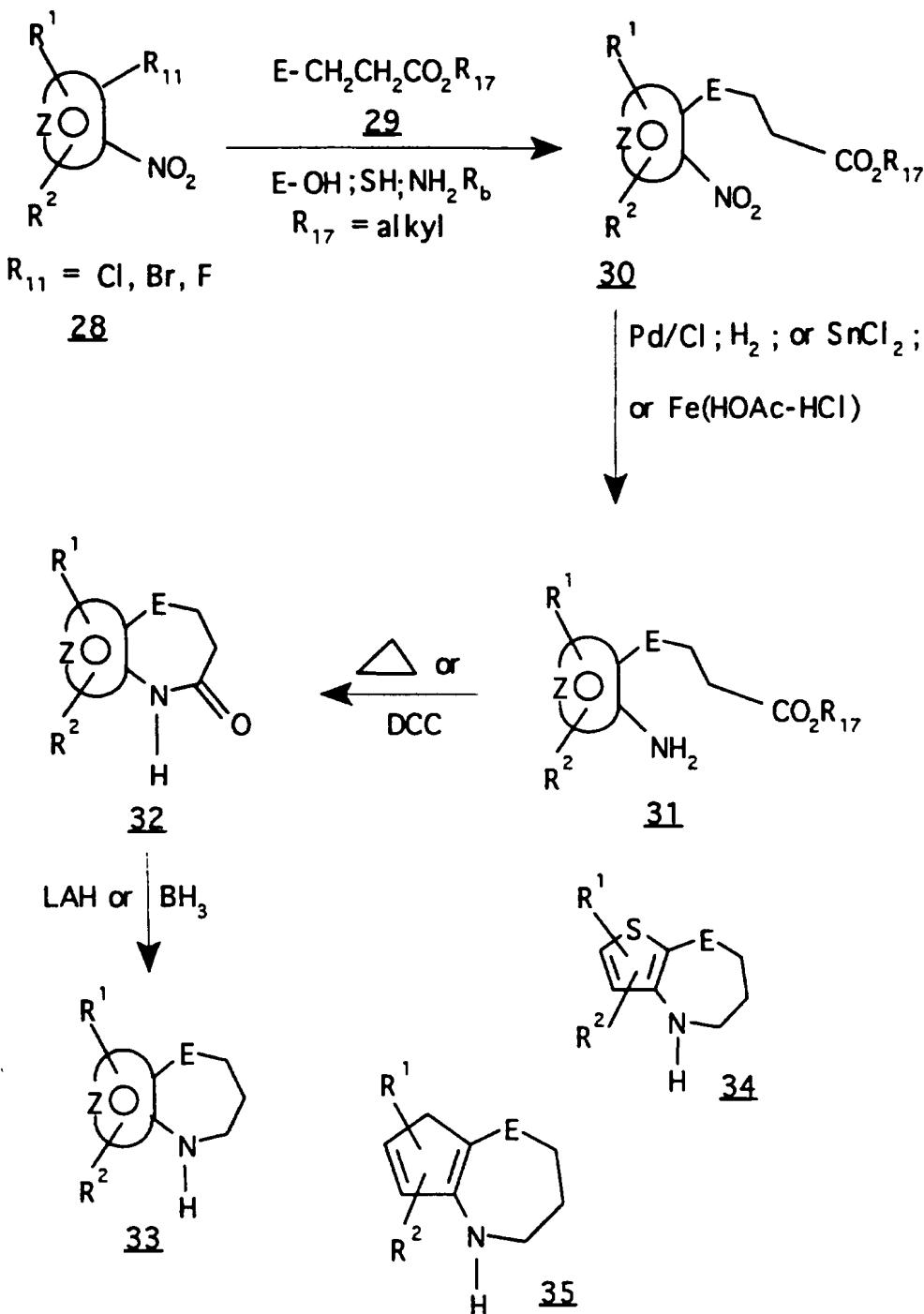
Scheme 8



-34-

Certain azepines such as compounds 34 and 35 useful for the preparation of compounds of this invention wherein E is a heteroatom, oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen may be  
5 synthesized according to Scheme 9. A halogenated heterocycle containing an adjacent nitro group, as exemplified in formulae 28, is reacted with an  $\alpha$ -substituted propionic acid or ester in the presence of a suitable base to give an intermediate 30. Reduction of  
10 the nitro group and ring closure gives the azepines 32. Reduction of the lactam 32 gives the azepines 33 which contain a fused heterocyclic ring. These intermediates 33 are then acylated with the appropriate aroyl chlorides or an activated aryl carboxylic acids to give  
15 directly compounds of this invention or intermediates convertible to final products as hereinbefore described. Representative examples, which may be synthesized according to Scheme 9, are illustrated by structural formulae 34 and 35.  
20 Intermediate azepines with a fused heterocyclic ring such as structures of formula 45, 46 and 47, noted as illustrative examples, may be prepared as shown in Scheme 10.

-35-

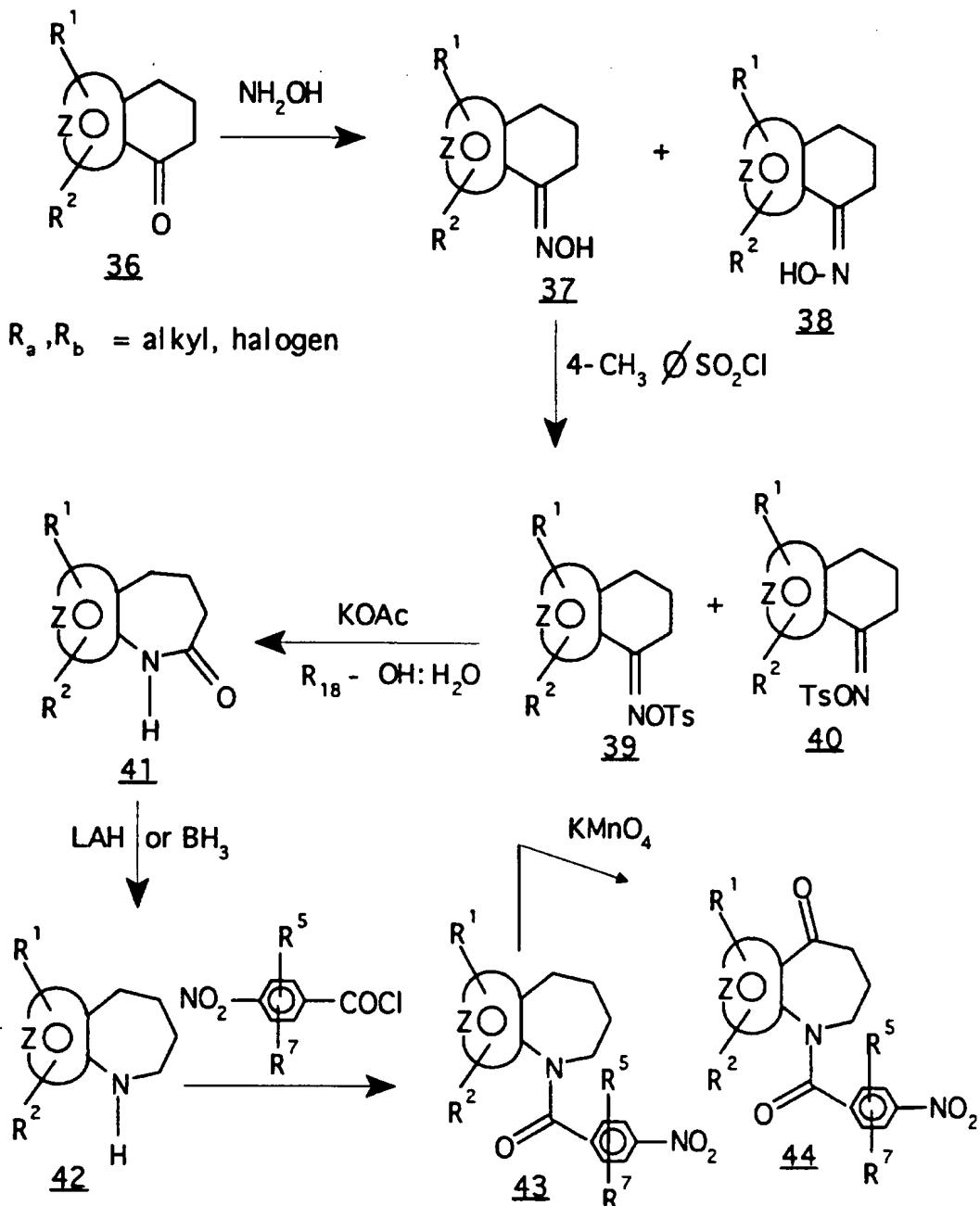
Scheme 9

-36-

As shown in Scheme 10, expansion of a six-membered ring into a seven-membered lactam is carried out by reaction of the ketone derivative 36 with hydroxyl amine to give the oxime derivative which in most cases exists as a mixture of syn and anti forms (structures 37 and 38). The mixture of oximes on reaction with 4-methylbenzenesulfonyl chloride gives either a mixture of oxime  $\alpha$ -tosylates or in some cases a single  $\alpha$ -tosylate 39. Heating the oxime  $\alpha$ -tosylates with potassium acetate in a alcohol-water mixture (such as ethanol-water or n-butanol-water) gives the 7-membered lactam derivatives 41. Reduction of the lactam with diborane, or lithium aluminium hydride (LAH) affords the fused heterocyclic azepines 42. The azepines 42 may be converted to intermediates 43 and 44, which are useful in the preparation of the novel compound of this invention. As hereinbefore stated, the heterocyclic azepines of structural types illustrated by formulae 45-55 may be prepared by the methods exemplified in Scheme 10 or literature methods for ring closures to azepines.

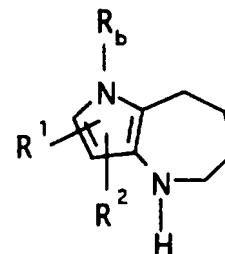
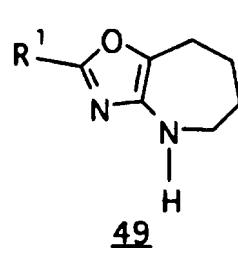
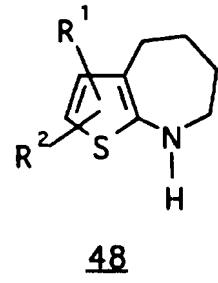
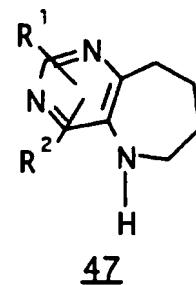
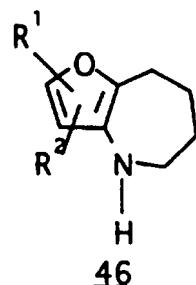
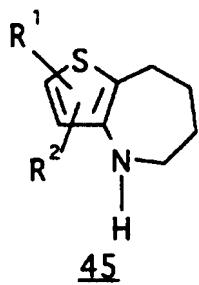
-37-

Scheme 10

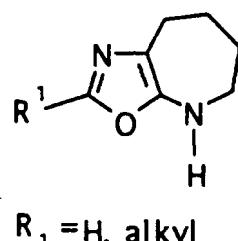


-38-

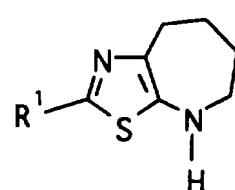
Scheme 10 (cont'd)



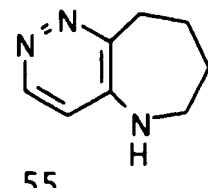
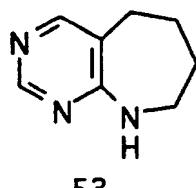
$R_1 = H, \text{ alkyl}$



$R_1 = H, \text{ alkyl}$



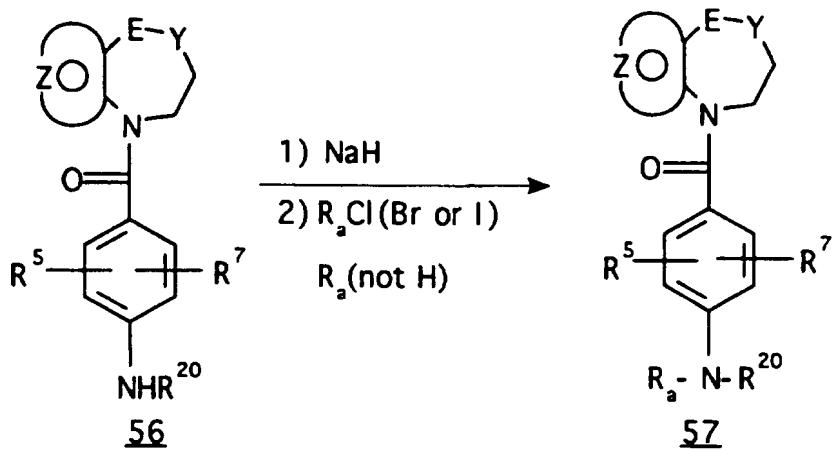
$R_1 = H, \text{ alkyl}$



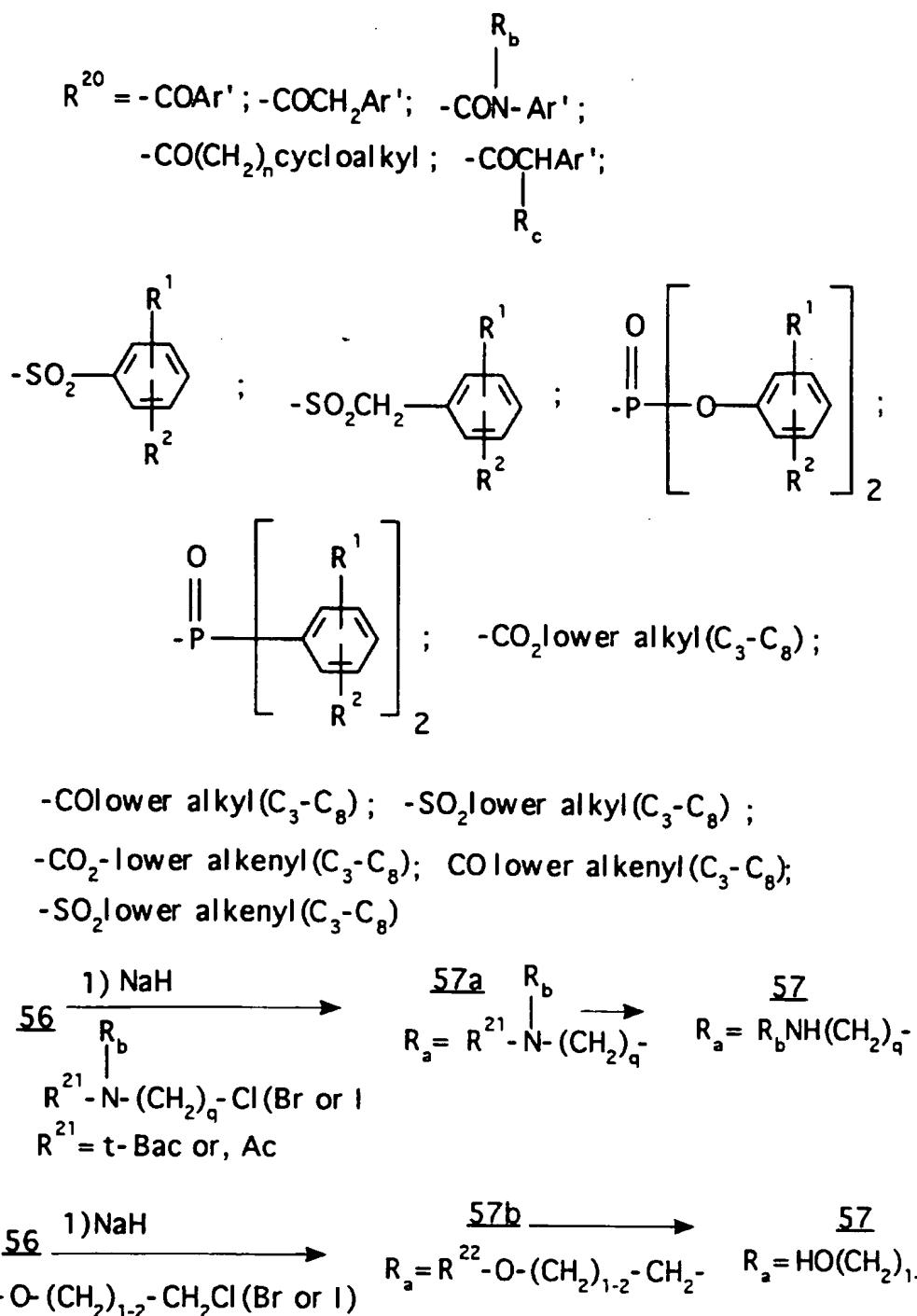
-39-

Certain of the compounds of this invention wherein Ra is as previously defined are prepared by introduction of the Ra either in a final step or in the penultimate step as shown in Scheme 11. In the derivatives 56 introduction of the Ra substituent (Ra not H) may be carried out in the final step by first forming the anion of the amide function of derivative 56 followed by the appropriate alkylation of the nitrogen atom to give products 57. In derivatives where protection-deprotection is needed the derivatives 56 are converted to the protected intermediates 57a and 57b which on deprotection afford compounds 57. The R<sup>21</sup> group may be a tertiary butoxy carbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known amine protecting moieties. The R<sup>22</sup> group may be a tertiary butylcarbonyl group, an acetyl group or other known hydroxy protecting moieties.

### Scheme 11



-40-

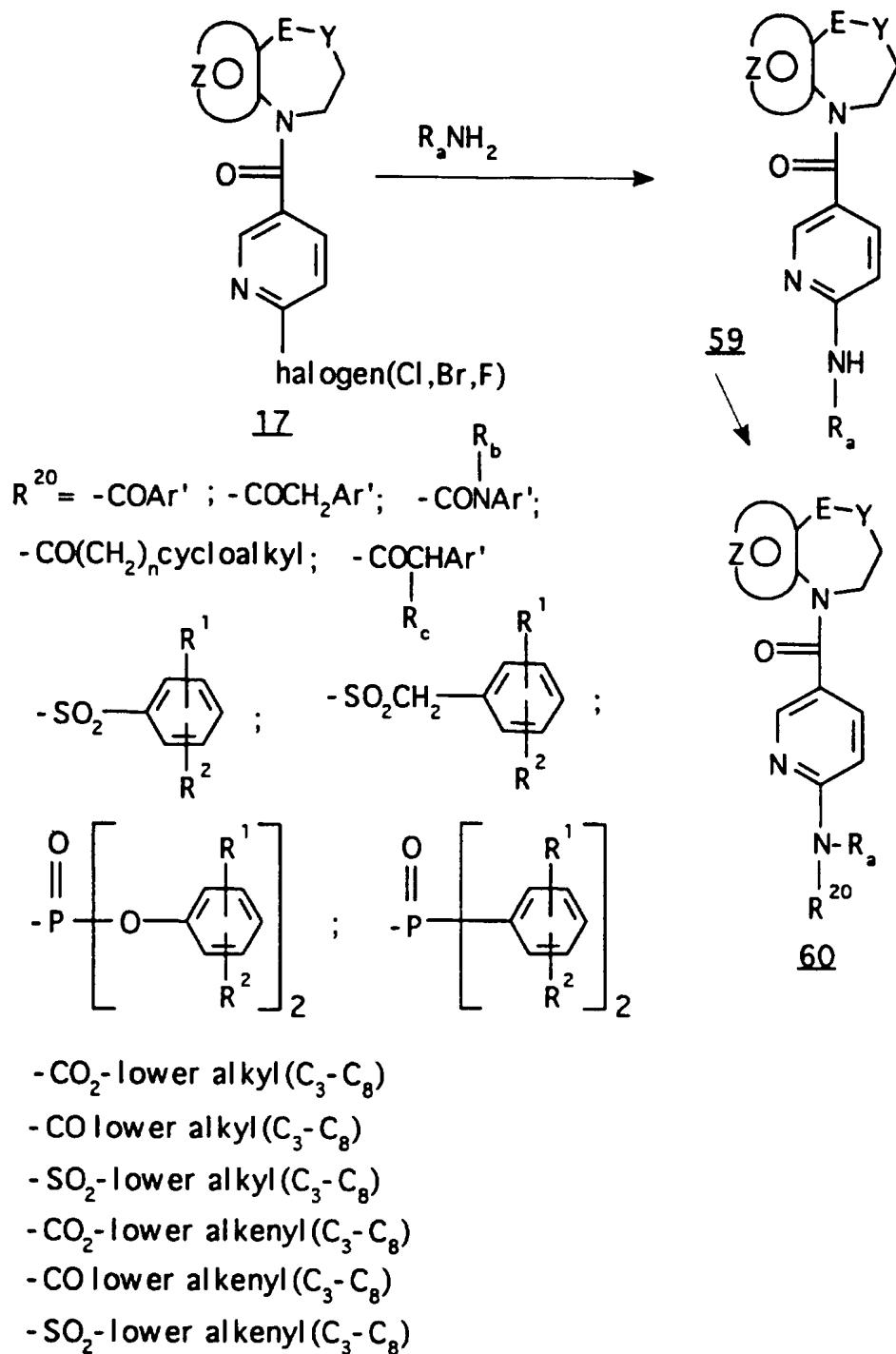


-41-

Compounds of this invention represented by the formula 60 may be prepared from the compounds represented by those of formula 59 as shown in Scheme 12. The 6-chloro, bromo or fluoro intermediate 17 is reacted with 5 an amino derivative of the formula  $R_aNH_2$  wherein  $R_a$  is as hereinbefore defined to give compounds of the formula 59. Reaction of the 6-aminonicotinoyl derivative 59 with an  $R^{20}$ -chloride wherein  $R^{23}$  is defined as shown in Scheme 12 affords compounds of this invention as exemplified by 10 formula 60.

-42-

Scheme 12



-43-

Reference Example 1

6,7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, Oxime

To a solution of 4-keto-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-thionaphthene in 260 ml of ethanol is added 27.4 g of 5 hydroxylamine hydrochloride. To the mixture is added 16.5 g of sodium acetate and 66 ml of water and then the mixture is refluxed for 3.5 hours; chilled in an ice bath and filtered. The solid is washed with water and ethanol to give 13 g of solid which is dried at 65°C under vacuum 10 to give 11.7 g of crystals, m.p. 124-126°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti). The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum and extracted with 250 ml of dichloromethane. The extract is washed with 100 ml each of water, brine and then dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the 15 solid dried at 65°C under vacuum to give 32 g of crystals, m.p. 106-109°C (mainly one isomer syn or anti).

Reference Example 2

6,7-Dihydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, Oxime-O-tosylate

To a stirred solution of 12.2 g of 6,7-di-20 hydrobenzo[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime (mixture of isomers) in 26 ml of dry pyridine is cooled to 0°C is added 15.3 g of p-toluenesulfonyl chloride (all at once). After 5 minutes, a solid separates and the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the cold mixture is added 25 195 ml of 2N HCl and the mixture filtered to give a solid which is washed with water and dried (under vacuum) to give 21.5 g of product as crystals, m.p. 117°-120°C.

Reference Example 3

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-blazepin-5-one

30 A mixture of 21.45 g of 6,7-dihydrobenzo-[b]thiophen-4(5H)-one, oxime-O-tosylate, 136.1 g of potassium acetate, 528 ml of ethanol and 904 ml of water is refluxed for 22 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum (to remove ethanol), chilled and filtered to 35 give a solid. The solid is washed with water, dried (in air) and recrystallized by dissolving in hot ethyl

-44-

acetate and diluting the solution with hexane. Chilling and filtering gives 7.1 g of crystals, m.p. 128°-132°C.

Reference Example 4

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

5 (1) To a mixture of 4.54 g of lithium aluminum hydride in 400 ml of dry tetrahydrofuran under argon is added dropwise a solution of 10.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 200 ml of tetrahydrofuran. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 10 45°-50°C (exothermic reaction), and cooled to room temperature. The mixture is chilled in an ice bath (0°C) and 4.5 ml of water added dropwise over 1 hour, followed by the dropwise addition of 4.5 ml of 2N sodium hydroxide and the dropwise addition of 14 ml of water. The mixture 15 is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with tetrahydrofuran. The fil-trate is concentrated to give a solid. The solid is crystallized from hexane to give 5.5 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 66-68°C.

20 (2) To a mixture of 21.2 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-5-one in 100 ml of tetrahydrofuran under argon, chilled to 0°C is added 25.2 ml of a 10.0 molar solution of borane-dimethylsulfide in tetrahydrofuran. The solution is stirred at room 25 temperature for 16 hours and is refluxed for 5 hours. The mixture is cooled to room temperature and 85 ml of methanol added dropwise (exotherm). The solvent is removed and 100 ml of methanol is added (2 times) and after each addition the solvent is removed. To the 30 residual solid (dried under vacuum) is added 126 ml of 2N NaOH and the mixture refluxed 3 hours. The mixture is chilled (2 hours) and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and the solvent removed to give 15.4 g of brown solid, m.p. 55°-57°C. A sample (3 35 g) is sublimed to give 2.6 g of crystals, m.p. 64°-65°C.

-45-

Reference Example 5

4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine

To a solution of 10.71 g of 5,6,7,8-tetra-  
5 hydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 19.4 ml of triethyl-  
amine in 150 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added  
in small portions 4-nitrobenzoyl chloride (exothermic).  
The mixture is stirred for 3 hours at 25°C and then  
washed with water, sodium bicarbonate solution, brine and  
10 dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed, the residue  
dried under vacuum and recrystallized by dissolving in  
hot ethyl acetate and diluting with hexane. Chilling  
overnight and filtering gives 16 g of light brown  
crystals, m.p. 141°-142°C.

15

Reference Example 6

4-(4-Nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-8-one

To a solution of 9.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-  
5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 713 ml of  
20 acetone is added 6.74 g of MgSO<sub>4</sub> and 351 ml of water  
followed by 8.2 g of KMnO<sub>4</sub> and heating at 70°C for 18  
hours. Another 6.24 g of MgSO<sub>4</sub> and 8.2 g of KMnO<sub>4</sub> is  
added and heating continued at 70°C for 8 hours. An  
additional 6.24 g of MgSO<sub>4</sub> and 8.2 g of KMnO<sub>4</sub> is added  
25 and heating continued at 70°C for 18 hours. The reaction  
mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the  
cake washed with acetone and 500 ml of methylene  
chloride. The combined filtrates are evaporated in vacuo  
to a residue which is washed with water and air dried to  
30 give 5.7 g of a solid. The solid is crystal-lized from  
ethyl acetate to give 5.1 g of off white solid, m.p. 184-  
186°C.

-46-

Reference Example 7

4-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one

To a mixture of 2.0 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-  
5 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 40 ml  
of glacial acetic acid is added 20 ml of 6N-hydrochloric  
acid. The mixture is cooled and 3.53 g of iron powder  
added in portions. The mixture is allowed to warm to  
10 room temperature and is heated at 70-80°C for 1 hour and  
then cooled to 0°C. To mixture is basified with 10N NaOH  
(pH 14) and extracted with 200 ml of ethyl acetate. The  
aqueous layer is again extracted with 200 ml of ethyl  
acetate and the extracts combined. The combined extract  
is washed with 100 ml each of H<sub>2</sub>O and brine and dried  
15 (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The extract is filtered through a thin pad of  
hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate con-centrated  
to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-  
hexane to give 1.24 g of crystals, m.p. 216-218°C.

Reference Example 8

20 2-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-  
thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A solution of 6.04 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-  
5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 40 ml of  
tetrahydrofuran is cooled to 0°C and 5.34 g of N-  
25 chlorosuccinimide added in portions. After the addi-  
tion, the mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. The  
mixture is concentrated, diluted with 300 ml of di-  
chloromethane and the mixture washed with 100 ml each of  
saturated K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution, H<sub>2</sub>O, 1N HCl and brine. The  
30 organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a  
thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is  
concentrated and the residue chromatographed by HPLC on  
silica gel (2-columns) with a Waters-Prep-500 instrument  
and the solvent system ethyl acetate-dichloromethane  
35 (1:1) containing 2% diethylether. The middle cuts are  
combined and concentrated to give 0.135 g of 2,3-di-

-47-

chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepine, m.p. 140°-142°C. The latter cuts are combined, concentrated and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 2.8 g of crystals, 119°-  
5 120°C.

Reference Example 9

2-Chloro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a solution of 2.6 g of 2-chloro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in a mixture of 52 ml of acetic acid and 26 ml of 6N HCl, cooled to 0°C, is added 4.32 g of iron powder in small portions. After the addition, the mixture is heated at 70°-80°C for 2 hours. The mixture is cooled in an ice bath (0°C) and made basic with 10N NaOH (pH 14). The mixture is extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and then 150 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml each of H<sub>2</sub>O and brine. The extract is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1.7 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 146°-149°C.

Reference Example 10

2-Chloro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one

To a stirred solution of 0.336 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 36 ml of acetone-water (2:1) is added 0.21 g of anhydrous magnesium sulfate and 0.275 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is heated at 70°C overnight. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture heated at 70°C for 6 hours. An additional 0.275 g of potassium permanganate and 0.21 g of magnesium sulfate is added and the mixture stirred and heated at 70°C for 24 hours. The

-48-

hot mixture is filtered and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is heated in a few ml of ethyl acetate, cooled and filtered to give 0.20 g of product as a solid. The reaction is repeated on 10 times the scale to give 1.3 g  
5 of off-white crystals, m.p. 165°-168°C.

Reference Example 11

4-(4-Aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepine

A solution of 9.97 g of 4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-  
10 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 110 ml of  
glacial acetic acid and 0.997 g of 10% palladium-on-  
carbon is hydrogenated in a Parr hydrogenator under 30-50  
lb. of pressure for 4.5 hours. The mixture is filtered  
15 through a pad of diatomaceous earth and the filtrate  
concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The gummy residue  
(8.1 g) is purified by HPLC on a Waters-Prep-500  
20 instrument with silica gel and ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1)  
as solvent. Fractions containing product are combined  
and the solvent removed. The residue is crystallized to  
give 4.0 g of crystals, m.p. 168°-172°C.

Reference Example 12

Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]benzoate

A 0.876 g sample of 60% sodium hydride in oil  
25 is washed with hexane followed by the addition of 60 ml  
of dry N,N-dimethylformamide. The reaction mixture is  
stirred for 1 hour under argon at room temperature after  
the addition of 4.73 g of  $\alpha$ -(2-chlorophenyl)-4-morpho-  
lineacetonitrile. To the reaction mixture is added  
30 4.58 g of methyl 4-(bromomethyl)benzoate and stirring  
continued for 3 hours. Several drops of acetic acid is  
added to ice water and the reaction quenched. The pH is  
3-4 and saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub> added to adjust the pH to 6-7.  
Upon cooling a solid forms which is filtered, washed with  
35 water and dried to give 5.92 g of yellow solid.  
Crystallization from methylene chloride-hexane gives 2.10

-49-

g of the desired product as a crystalline solid, m.p. 116-118°C.

Reference Example 13

Methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate

5 A mixture of 1.0 g of methyl [4-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-cyano-2-(4-morpholinyl)ethyl]benzoate and 14 ml of acetic acid and 6 ml of water is heated at reflux for 20 minutes then poured over crushed ice. After stirring for 15 minutes, the resulting solid is collected, washed 10 with water and air dried to give 0.63 g of tan solid, m.p. 40-42°C.

Reference Example 14

4-[2-(2-Chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoic acid

15 A mixture of 18.78 g of methyl 4-[2-(2-chlorophenyl)-2-oxoethyl]benzoate in 288.8 ml of CH<sub>3</sub>OH, 72.2 ml of water and 5.2 g of NaOH is refluxed for 3 hours then acidified with 2 N citric acid. The reaction mixture is evaporated in vacuo to remove the CH<sub>3</sub>OH. The aqueous phase is extracted with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and acidified with 20 1 N HCl. The resulting solid is collected and dried under vacuum to give 17.27 g of the desired product, m.p. 168-172°C.

Reference Example 15

Methyl 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate

25 To a solution of 2.11 g of 4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxylic acid in 100 ml of methanol is added 202 mg of p-toluenesulfonic acid hydrate and the mixture heated at reflux for 24 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and 30 the methanol concentrated in vacuo to a residue. The residue is dissolved in 100 ml of ethyl acetate and washed with 30 ml of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 30 ml of brine. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and the filtrate concentrated in vacuo to a 35 residue which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 1.75 g of the desired product as a white

-50-

crystalline solid, m.p. 100-102°C.

Reference Example 16

Methyl 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3,2-blazepine-3-carboxylate

5 To a mixture of 1.0 g of methyl 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylate and 502 mg of sodium azide in 5 ml of chloroform is added dropwise at 32-36°C under argon 1.4 ml of sulfuric acid. The reaction mixture is stirred at room temperature for 24  
10 hours. The reaction mixture is diluted with 14 ml of water and rendered alkaline with NH<sub>4</sub>OH and extracted with chloroform. The separated organic layer is washed with water, brine and dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in vacuo to give 1.0 g of the desired product as a white  
15 solid.

Reference Example 17

(E) 4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-[(4-methylphenyl)-sulfonyloxy]iminol-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid

20 To a partial solution of 2.8 g of (E)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid in 7 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 3.01 g of p-toluene sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 40 ml of cold 1 N HCl, filtered, washed with water and dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>.  
25 The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 4.78 g of the desired product as an off-white solid, m.p. 155-165°C.

Reference Example 18

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-5-oxo-4H-furo[3,2-blazepine-3-carboxylic acid

30 A mixture of 1.0 g of (E)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyloxy]iminol-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid, 5.9 g of potassium acetate, 23 ml of ethanol and 39 ml of water is heated at reflux for 48  
35 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, 80 ml of methylene chloride added and the separated organic

-51-

layer washed with water, brine and dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a solid which is purified by chromatography on a preparative silica gel plate by elution with 0.5% acetic acid in 5 ethyl acetate. The eluted band is washed with 1% acetic acid in ethyl acetate. The organic layer is dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$  and concentrated in vacuo to give 200 mg of off-white solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 165 mg of the desired product as a white 10 solid.

Reference Example 19

(E) and (Z)-4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid

To a solution of 30.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-15 4-oxo-3-benzofurancarboxylic acid in 225 ml of ethanol is added 22.97 g of hydroxylamine hydrochloride, followed by 18.10 g of sodium acetate and 55 ml of water. The reaction mixture is heated at reflux for 2.5 hours and concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is diluted with 20 600 ml of ethyl acetate, washed with 2 x 200 ml of water, brine and dried over  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is dried under vacuum to give 31.0 g of the desired product as a solid.

Reference Example 20

(E) and (Z)-6,7-Dihydro-4-(5H)benzofuranone, O-[(4-methylphenyl)sulfonyl]loxime

To a partial solution of 28.0 g of (E) and (Z)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(hydroxyimino)benzofuran in 54 ml of pyridine is added portionwise at 0°C, 38.8 g of p-toluene 30 sulfonyl chloride under argon. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour then diluted with 600 ml of ethyl acetate and 400 ml of cold 2 N HCl. The organic layer is washed with 200 ml of water and 200 ml of brine, and dried with  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ . The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 50 35 g of the desired product as a solid. Crystallization from ethyl alcohol by allowing to stand at room

-52-

temperature gives 19.9 g of off-white needles, m.p. 123-125°C. The filtrate is allowed to stand and the crystals collected and dried to give 10.0 g of the desired product as an off-white solid, 83-85°C.

5

Reference Example 21

4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a solution of 15.0 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 150 ml of dichloromethane 10 cooled to 0°C is added 27.2 ml of triethylamine. After stirring 5 minutes, a solution of 28.0 g of 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride in 140 ml of dichloromethane is added slowly. The solution is stirred at room temperature overnight, diluted with 450 ml of dichloromethane 15 and the solution washed with 200 ml each of water, 2N citric acid, 1 M sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer is dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>, filtered through a thin pad of hydrated magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue is crystallized 20 from ethyl acetate to give 24.3 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 131-134°C.

Reference Example 22

4-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

25 A mixture of 5.0 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 16.8 g of stannous chloride dihydrate in 184 ml of ethanol is heated at 80°C under argon for 1 hour. The solution is 30 cooled in an ice bath and made basic by the slow careful addition of 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> (ca. 380 ml). The mixture is stirred for 1 hour at room temperature and extracted with 400 ml of ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer is extracted with an additional 250 ml of ethyl acetate. The extracts are combined and washed with 300 ml of brine, dried 35 (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under

-53-

vacuum to give a white solid which is recrystallized from ethyl acetate to give 4.23 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 176-179°C.

5

Reference Example 23

4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine-8-one

To a solution of 2.02 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 144 ml of acetone is added 1.56 g of magnesium sulfate, 72 ml of water and 1.89 g of potassium permanganate. The mixture is stirred and heated at 70-75°C for 4 hours. An additional amount of magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) is added and the mixture stirred and heated at 75°C for 16 hours. Magnesium sulfate (1.56 g) and potassium permanganate (1.89 g) are added and the mixture stirred and heated at 75°C for 5 hours. The mixture is filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with acetone and dichloromethane. The filtrate is concentrated and the residue (1.4 g) is heated with ethyl acetate, the mixture (with insoluble solid) cooled and filtered to give 1.0 g of product as a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals, m.p. 180°-185°C.

Reference Example 24

4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8-hydroxy-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a solution of 1.0 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine-8-one in 10 ml of tetrahydrofuran is added 1 ml of ethanol and the mixture cooled to 0°C. To the mixture is added 0.129 g of sodium borohydride in portions and the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 1 hour. To the mixture is added slowly 4.2 ml of saturated ammonium chloride solution at 0°C. After stirring at room temperature for

-54-

10 minutes, the solvent is removed under vacuum and 80 ml of ethyl acetate added to the residue. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of H<sub>2</sub>O, 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine. The organic layer is dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give the product as a white glass.

Reference Example 25

4-(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepine

A solution of 0.90 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)-8-hydroxy-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine in 5 ml of dichloromethane cooled to -10°C is added under argon 533 µl of triethylamine and dropwise 296 µl of methanesulfonyl chloride. After one hour the cooling bath is removed and the mixture allowed to stand at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 10 ml of dichloromethane and 5 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated under vacuum to give an oil which is crystallized by adding hexane. Filtration gives light yellow crystals (0.80 g).

Reference Example 26

5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride

A mixture of 8.0 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoic acid and 52 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and two times 50 ml of toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum to give 8.5 g of product as a gum.

Reference Example 27

2-Chloro-5-(methylthio)benzoyl chloride

A mixture of 2.03 g of 2-chloro-5-(methylthio)benzoic acid and 10 ml of thionyl chloride is heated on a steam bath for 1 hour. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and 20 ml of toluene added and removed under

-55-

vacuum (2 times) to give 2.2 g of brown needles.

Reference Example 28

2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl chloride

As described for Reference Example 26, 25 g of  
5 2-chloro-4-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with thionyl  
chloride (124 ml) to give the product (27.0 g) as a brown  
oil.

Reference Example 29

2-Chloro-5-nitrobenzoyl chloride

10 As described for Reference Example 26, 5.0 g of  
2-chloro-5-nitrobenzoic acid is reacted with 50 ml of  
thionyl chloride to give 5.6 g of the product as an off-  
white solid.

Reference Example 30

2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl chloride

As described for Reference Example 26, 3.0 g of  
2,3-dimethylbenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl  
chloride to give 3.2 g of the product as a colorless oil.

Reference Example 31

2-Chlorobenzoyl chloride

As described for Reference Example 26, 3.13 g  
of 2-chlorobenzoic acid is reacted with 40 ml of thionyl  
chloride to give 3.32 of product as an off-white semi  
solid.

Reference Example 32

4-(2-Chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepine

To a solution of 2.36 g of  $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in 13 ml  
of ethanol is added 0.70 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-nitro-  
30 benzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine. The  
mixture is heated at 75°C for one hour, cooled to room  
temperature and concentrated under vacuum to 10 ml. The  
mixture is chilled in an ice bath and 1 M  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  added  
slowly. The mixture is extracted with 100 ml ethyl  
35 acetate and then with 80 ml of ethyl acetate. The  
extracts are combined, washed with brine and dried

-56-

(Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The extract is passed through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the pad washed with ethyl acetate. The filtrate is concentrated to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give white 5 crystals, m.p. 192°-200°C.

Reference Example 33

4-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

A mixture of 43.42 g (0.26 mol) of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate and 40.8 g (0.26 mol) of 2-methylbenzoyl 10 chloride in 150 ml of dichloromethane is cooled in an ice bath and 26.56 g (0.26 mol) of triethylamine is added dropwise. After the addition, the solution is stirred at room temperature overnight. The mixture is poured into water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer 15 is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the solid slurried with ethyl acetate and filtered to give 57 g of ethyl 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 110-115°C.

20 A mixture of 50.7 g (0.20 mol) of the preceding compound, 280 ml of ethanol and 55 ml of 10 N NaOH is refluxed for 5 minutes. The mixture is cooled to room temperature, diluted with 200 ml of water and acidified with concentrated hydrochloric acid (pH 1-2). The 25 mixture is filtered and the solid washed with water and dried to give 51 g of product as white crystals, m.p. 270-275°C.

Reference Example 34

4-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoyl chloride

30 A mixture of 10.3 g of 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)-amino]benzoic acid and 32 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solution is concentrated under vacuum. Toluene is added and the solvent removed under vacuum. Toluene is added and the mixture chilled 35 and filtered to give a yellow solid, m.p. 135-141°C.

Reference Example 354-[(2,6-Dimethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid]

A mixture of 2 g (10 mmol) of 2,6-dimethoxybenzoyl chloride, 1.65 g (10 mmol) of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate, 1.11 g of triethylamine and 61 mg of 4-dimethylaminopyridine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is refluxed for 20 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with water, 1 N HCl, 1 N Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed to give a solid which is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 1.22 g of ethyl 4-[(2,6-dimethoxybenzoyl)amino]benzoate as crystals, m.p. 183-185°C.

A mixture of 3.88 g (11.79 mmol) of the preceding compound, 17.3 ml of 2 N NaOH and 20 ml of methanol is stirred at room temperature overnight. Methanol (30 ml) and water (10 ml) are added and the solution refluxed for 1/2 hour. The solvents are removed under vacuum and the residual solid triturated with ether and the ether decanted. The solid is dissolved in 30 ml of water and acidified with 2 N HCl (pH 3). The mixture is filtered, the solid washed with water and dried at 60°C under vacuum to give 3.0 g of solid, m.p. 236-240°C.

25                   Reference Example 364-[(4-Pyridinylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid]

To a cooled mixture of 1.78 g (0.01 mol) of isoniconinoyl chloride hydrochloride in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.52 g (0.025 mol) of triethylamine. To the solution is added a solution of 1.65 g of ethyl 4-aminobenzoate in 5 ml of dichloromethane. After stirring at room temperature overnight, 50 mg of 4-dimethylaminopyridine is added and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours. The mixture is poured into water and filtered to give 3.4 g of brown solid. A 0.50 g sample is triturated with ethyl acetate to give 0.37 g of ethyl

-58-

4-[(4-pyridinylcarbonyl)amino]benzoate as yellow crystals, m.p. 143-145°C.

Reference Example 37

2-Methylfurane-3-carbonyl chloride

5 A mixture of 4.0 g of methyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxylate, 30 ml of 2 N NaOH and 15 ml methanol is refluxed for 1.5 hours. The solvent is removed under vacuum to give a solid. The solid is extracted with dichloromethane (discarded). The solid is dissolved in  
10 water and the solution acidified with 2 N citric acid to give a solid. The solid is washed with water and dried to give crystals 1.05 g of crystals of 2-methylfuran-3-carboxylic acid. The preceding compound (0.95 g) and 3 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. The  
15 solvent is removed, toluene added (20 ml, three times) and the solvent removed to give the product as an oil.

Reference Example 38

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)aminobenzoic acid

20 A sample of 1.51 g of sodium hydride (60% in oil) is washed with hexane under argon to remove the oil. To the washed sodium hydride is added 5 ml of N,N-dimethylformamide. To this mixture is added dropwise a solution of 8.69 g of ethyl 4-[(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-benzoate in 20 ml of dimethylformamide. The mixture is  
25 stirred at room temperature for 0.5 hour and then 5.23 g of methyl iodide is added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is diluted with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), concentrated to reduce the  
30 volume and the solution filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate. The filtrate is concentrated in vacuo to give 11 g of an oil (1:1 mixture of product and N,N-dimethylformamide). The preceding product, ethyl 4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]-benzoate, (11 g) is dissolved in 30 ml of methanol and 25 ml of 2 N NaOH added. The mixture is refluxed for 2

-59-

hours and the solvent removed. The residue is extracted with ether (discard) and the remaining residue dissolved in 50 ml of water. The basic solution is acidified with 2 N citric acid and the solid filtered off and washed 5 with water. The product is air dried to give 6.72 g of crystals, m.p. 187-190°C.

Reference Example 39

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoyl chloride

10 A solution of 6.72 g of 4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methylbenzoyl)amino]benzoic acid in 20 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for one hour. The volatiles are removed in vacuo. Toluene is added to the residue and then the toluene removed in vacuo (repeated several times) to give the 7.3 g of product as a brown oil.

15 As described for Reference Example 38, but substituting the appropriate ethyl 4-[(N-royl)amino]-benzoate, the following compounds are prepared.

Reference Example 40

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

20 Reference Example 41

N-[N-Methyl-N-(2,5-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 42

N-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dichlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 43

25 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chloro-4-methylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 44

4-[N-methyl-N-(2-methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

30 Reference Example 45

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 46

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,3-dimethylbenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 47

35 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

-60-

Reference Example 48

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 49

5 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2,4-dimethoxybenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 50

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 51

10 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiobenzoyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 52

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylthiophen-3-ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 53

15 4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylthiophene-2-ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 54

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylfuran-3-ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

20 Reference Example 55

4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-methylfuran-2-ylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 56

4-[N-Methyl-N-(phenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

25 Reference Example 57

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-chlorophenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 58

4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methoxyphenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 59

30 4-[N-Methyl-N-(2-methylphenylacetyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 60

4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

Reference Example 61

4-[N-Methyl-N-(3-cyclohexenecarbonyl)aminolbenzoic acid

-61-

Reference Example 62

4-[N-Methyl-N-(cyclohexylacetyl)aminobenzoic acid

Reference Example 63

4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one. 8-oxime

5 To a suspension of 2.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 7 ml of ethanol is added 0.681 g of hydroxylamine, hydrochloride; 0.400 g of sodium acetate and 2 ml of 10 water. The mixture is refluxed for 2 hours, chilled, filtered and the solid washed with water. The solid is dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 2.0 g of yellow solid.

Reference Example 64

15 4,5,6,7-Tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one. 8-oxime

A mixture of 1.0 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 8-oxime, 6.8 g of  $\text{SnCl}_2 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and 14 ml of ethanol is refluxed for 2 20 hours. The mixture is chilled (ice bath) and 1 M  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  is added until the pH is approximately 8. The mixture is stirred for 1 hour and then extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract is washed with brine, dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is 25 chromatographed on prep-plates of silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (2:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate gives 0.37 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 156-160°C.

Reference Example 65

30 8-Amino-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

The procedure from Synthetic Communications 18(8) 777-782 (1988) is followed.

35 To a mixture of 0.50 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4-(4-nitrobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one, 8-oxime,

-62-

0.50 g of ammonium acetate and 0.283 g of sodium cyanoborohydride in 25 ml of methanol is added dropwise 2.54 ml of titanium trichloride (20% aqueous solution) while stirring. The mixture is worked-up and the process 5 repeated several times to give the product as a solid.

Reference Example 66

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-[(2-methylbenzoyl)-oxyliminol]-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

10 To a cooled (0°C) solution of 0.18 g of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepine-8-one, 8-oxime and 261 µl of triethylamine in 4 ml of dichloromethane is added 204 µl of 2-methylbenzoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred under argon for 16 15 hours and diluted with 40 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of H<sub>2</sub>O, 2 N citric acid, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give 0.22 g of white 20 amorphous solid

Reference Example 67

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide, 8-oxime

To a stirred solution of Reference Example 66 25 (0.20 g) in 4 ml of methanol is added 0.93 ml of 1 N NaOH. The mixture is stirred overnight and concentrated under vacuum. The residue is partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer is washed with brine and concentrated under vacuum. Chilling gives the 30 product as crystals (0.10 g).

Reference Example 68

5-(2-Pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carbonyl chloride

A mixture of 1.0 g of 5-(2-pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carboxylic acid and 5 ml of thionyl chloride is 35 refluxed for 2.5 hours. The mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum. Toluene is added (2 times) and the

-63-

solvent removed under vacuum to give the product as an off-white solid.

Reference Example 69

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

5 To a chilled (0°C) solution of 5.0 g of methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate and 12.6 ml of diisopropylethylamine in 50 ml of dichloromethane under argon is added a solution of 9.7 ml of cyclohexylcarbonyl chloride in 10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is  
10 stirred at room temperature overnight and diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 60 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with 60 ml of brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate  
15 concentrated under vacuum to give 12.8 g of a solid.

The above solid (12.0 g) in a mixture of 150 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) is chilled (0°C) and 62 ml of 2 N sodium hydroxide added. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, neutralized with 10 ml of glacial acetic acid and concentrated under vacuum. The mixture (containing solid) is acidified to pH 1 with 1 N HCl and extracted with 250 ml of ethyl acetate and twice with 100 ml of ethyl acetate. The combined extract is washed with 100 ml of brine, dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>) and  
25 concentrated to a white solid. Trituration with hexane gives 6.5 g of product as a white solid.

Reference Example 70

Methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate

Dry methanol (400 ml) is cooled in an ice bath  
30 and HCl gas is bubbled into the mixture for 25 minutes. To the MeOH-HCl is added 30 g of 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid and then the mixture is stirred and heated at 90°C for 2 hours (all the solid dissolved). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residual  
35 solid dissolved in 100 ml of water. The acidic solution is neutralized with saturated sodium bicarbonate (solid

- 64 -

separated) and the mixture chilled and filtered to give 30 g of white crystals, m.p. 150°-154°C.

Reference Example 71

6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

5 To a mixture of 4.5 g of methyl 6-amino-pyridine-3-carboxylate and 5.53 ml of triethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane (cooled in an ice bath) is added 6.38 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 10 ml of 10 dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours and an additional 3.4 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride added. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the mixture is filtered to give 3.0 g of methyl 6-[(bis(5-fluoro-2-15 methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate. The filtrate is concentrated to dryness and the residue triturated with hexane and ethyl acetate to give an additional 9.0 g of bis acylated compound.

20 A mixture of 12.0 g of methyl 6-[(bis(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, 60 ml of methanol-tetrahydrofuran (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum, diluted with 25 ml of water, cooled and acidified with 1 N HCl. The mixture is 25 filtered and the solid washed with water to give 6.3 g of the product as a white solid.

30 As described for Reference Example 71, but substituting the appropriate aroyl chloride, heteroaroyl chloride, cycloalkanoyl chlorides, phenylacetylchlorides and related appropriate acid chlorides, the following 6-[(aroylamino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids, 6-[(heteroaroyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids and related 6-[(acylated)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acids are prepared.

-65-

Reference Example 72

6-[3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 73

5 6-[2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 74

6-[3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

10 Reference Example 75

6-[2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 76

6-[3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

15 Reference Example 77

6-[2-Methylbenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 78

6-[2-chlorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

20 Reference Example 79

6-[2-Fluorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 80

6-[2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

25 Reference Example 81

6-[2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 82

6-[4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

30 Reference Example 83

6-[3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 84

6-[2,4-Difluorobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

35 Reference Example 85

6-[2-Bromobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

-66-

Reference Example 86

6-[2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 87

5      6-[Tetrahydrofuryl-2-carbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 88

6-[Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 89

6-[Cyclohexylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 90

6-[cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 91

6-[5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzeneacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 92

20      6-[2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 93

6-[cyclopentylcarbonyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 94

6-[cyclohexylacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 95

6-[3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 96

6-[2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 97

6-[3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 98

35      6-[2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl]aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

-67-

Reference Example 99

6-[(3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 100

5    6-[(2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 101

6-[(2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 102

10    6-[(3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 103

6-[(2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 104

15    6-[(2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 105

6-[(2-Methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 106

20    6-[(2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 107

6-[(4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 108

25    6-[(2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 109

6-[(2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 110

30    6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 111

6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 112

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

35

-68-

Reference Example 113

6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic acid

Reference Example 114

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

5 acid

Reference Example 115

6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

acid

Reference Example 116

10 6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carboxylic

acid

Reference Example 117

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-

carboxylic acid

15 Reference Example 118

6-[(5-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl

chloride

A mixture of 6.2 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 23 ml of 20 thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour. An additional 12 ml of thionyl chloride is added and the mixture refluxed for 0.5 hour. The mixture is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and 30 ml of toluene added to the residue. The toluene is removed under vacuum and the 25 process (add toluene and remove) is repeated to give 7.7 g of crude product as a solid.

As described for Reference Example 118, the following 6-(acyl)amino)pyridine-3-carbonyl chlorides are prepared.

30 Reference Example 119

6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl

chloride

Reference Example 120

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl

35 chloride

- 69 -

Reference Example 121

6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 122

5 6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 123

6-[(3-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

10 Reference Example 124

6-[(2-Methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 125

6-[(2-Chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride,  
white crystals

15 Reference Example 126

6-[(2-Fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 127

6-[(2-Chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

20 Reference Example 128

6-[(2,4-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 129

25 6-[(4-Chloro-2-fluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 130

6-[(3,4,5-Trimethoxybenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 131

30 6-[(2,4-Difluorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 132

6-[(2-Bromobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 133

35 6-[(2-Chloro-4-nitrobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

-70-

Reference Example 134

6-[(Tetrahydrofuryl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 135

5       6-[(Tetrahydrothienyl-2-carbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 136

6-[(Cyclohexylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 137

10      6-[(Cyclohex-3-enecarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 138

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 139

6-[(2-Chlorobenzeneacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 140

20      6-[(Cyclopentylcarbonyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 141

6-[(Cyclohexylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 142

25      6-[(3-Methyl-2-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 143

6-[(2-Methyl-3-thienylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 144

30      6-[(3-Methyl-2-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 145

6-[(2-Methyl-3-furanylacetyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

-71-

Reference Example 146

6-[2-Methyl-5-fluorobenzeneacetyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 147

5    6-[3-Methyl-2-tetrahydrothienylacetyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 148

6-[2-Methyl-3-tetrahydrothienylacetyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

10    Reference Example 149

6-[2,5-Dichlorobenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 150

6-[3,5-Dichlorobenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

15    Reference Example 151

6-[2-Methyl-4-chlorobenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 152

20    6-[2,3-Dimethylbenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 153

6-[2-Methoxybenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 154

25    6-[2-Trifluoromethoxybenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 155

6-[4-Chloro-2-methoxybenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

30    Reference Example 156

6-[2-(Trifluoromethyl)benzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

Reference Example 157

6-[2,6-Dichlorobenzoyl]aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl chloride

35    Reference Example 158

-72-

Reference Example 158

6-[(2,6-Dimethylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

Reference Example 159

5      6-[(2-Methylthiobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

Reference Example 160

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-  
carbonyl chloride

10      Reference Example 161

6-[(2,3-Dichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

Reference Example 162

6-[(4-Fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

Reference Example 163

6-[(2,3,5-Trichlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

Reference Example 164

20      6-[(5-Fluoro-2-chlorobenzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-carbonyl  
chloride

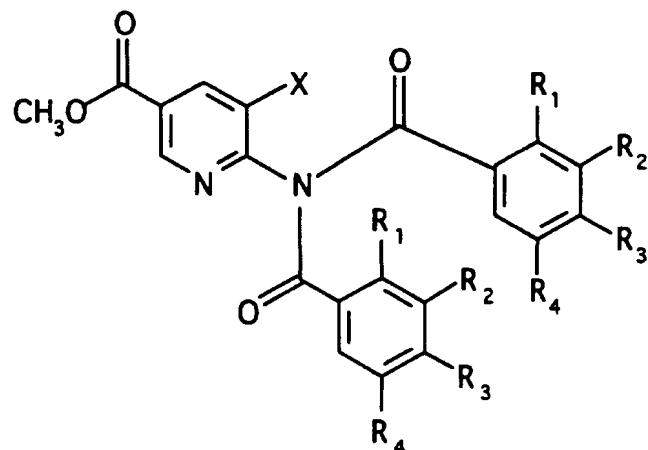
Reference Example 165

6-[(2-Fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzoyl)aminolpyridine-3-  
carbonyl chloride

25      As described for Reference Example 71, the  
following bis acylated products (Table A) are prepared  
and purified by silica gel chromatography. These  
compounds are then hydrolysed to the acids as described  
in Example 71 (Table B).

-73-

Table A

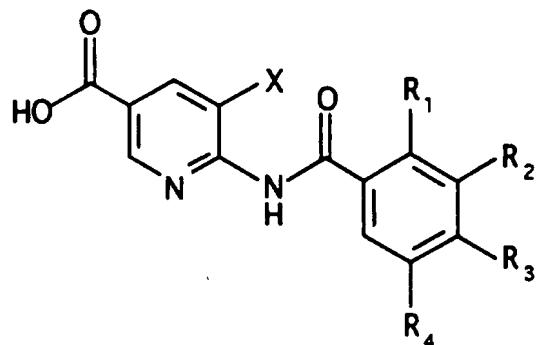


Ref. Ex. No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	X	M <sup>+</sup>
166	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	388
167	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	424
168	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	426
169	H	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	540
170	Cl	H	H	H	H	430
171	F	H	F	H	H	396
172	Br	H	H	H	H	520
173	Cl	H	F	H	H	412
174	Ph	H	H	H	H	512
175	Cl	H	H	Br	H	474
176	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	Br	
177	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	Br	468

5 M<sup>+</sup> is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum

-74-

Table B



Ref. Ex. No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	X	M <sup>+</sup>
178	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	256
179	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	274
180	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	274
181	H	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	332
182	Cl	H	H	H	H	276
183	F	H	F	H	H	278
184	Br	H	H	H	H	322
185	Cl	H	F	H	H	294
186	Ph	H	H	H	H	318
187	Cl	H	H	Br	H	356
188	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	Cl	
189	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	Br	336

M<sup>+</sup> is molecular ion found from FAB mass spectrum.

5

Reference Example 190

6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

To a stirred solution of 6-aminonicotinic acid (13.8 g, 0.1 mole) in glacial acetic acid (100 ml), bromine (16 g, 5 ml, 0.1 mole) in acetic acid (20 ml) is 10 added slowly. The reaction mixture is stirred for 8 hours at room temperature and the acetic acid is removed under reduced pressure. The yellow solid residue is dissolved in water and carefully neutralized with 30%

-75-

NH<sub>4</sub>OH. The separated solid is filtered and washed with water to give 18 g of solid; mass spectrum: 218 (M<sup>+</sup>).

Reference Example 191

Methyl 6-amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylate

5        6-Amino-5-bromopyridine-3-carboxylic acid (10 g, 50 mmol) is dissolved in saturated methanolic HCl (100 ml) and refluxed for 24 hours. The solvent, methanol, is re-moved under reduced pressure and the residue is dissolved in ice cold water. The aqueous solution is  
10      neutralized with 0.1 N NaOH and the solid which separates is filtered; washed well with water and air dried to yield 10 g of product as a solid; mass spectrum 231 (M<sup>+</sup>).

Reference Example 192

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)aminopyridine-3-carboxylic acid

15       To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 5.0 g methyl 6-aminopyridine-3-carboxylate, 12.6 ml of N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine in 40 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 12.2 g of 2-methylbenzeneacetyl chloride in  
20      10 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight. The mixture is diluted with 200 ml of dichloromethane and 50 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 50 ml each of 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried  
25      (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate con-centrated to dryness. The residue (9.0 g) is chroma-toographed on a silica gel column with hexane-ethyl acetate (3:1) as eluent to give 8.6 g of solid. This solid, mainly methyl  
30      6-[(2-methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylate, is dissolved in 60 ml of tetrahydrofuran-methanol (1:1) and 23 ml of 5 N NaOH added to the solution. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight and the mixture concentrated under vacuum.  
35      Water (25 ml) is added and the mixture is stirred and acidified with cold 1 N HCl. The mixture is chilled and

-76-

the solid filtered and washed with water to give 5.9 g of off-white solid.

Reference Example 193

6-[(2-Methylbenzeneacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxyl chloride

5 A mixture of 4.5 g of 6-[(2-methylbenzene-acetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carboxylic acid and 25 ml of thionyl chloride is refluxed for 1 hour and then concentrated to dryness under vacuum. To the residue is  
10 added 20 ml of toluene and the solvent removed under vacuum. The addition and removal of toluene is repeated and the residual solid dried at room temperature under vacuum to give 5.3 g of dark brown solid.

Reference Example 194

15 2-(2-Pyridinyl)benzoic acid  
A mixture of methyl 2-iodobenzoate (12 g, 47 mmol), 2-pyridinyl-tri-n-butyl stannous (20 g, 55 mmol) and tetrakis (triphenyl phosphine) palladium (0) (2 g), is refluxed in toluene (degassed) for 48 hours. The  
20 reaction mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue is chromatographed on a column of silica gel with 50% ethylacetate:hexane as eluent. The initial fractions (2 lits) are discarded and finally the product methyl 2-(2-pyridinyl)benzoate, is eluted and isolated as an oil.  
25 (Yield: 5.5 g): mass spectrum, 213 (M<sup>+</sup>)

A mixture of the preceding compound (3.0 g, 14 mmol) and NaOH (600 mg, 15 mmol) is refluxed in MeOH:water (9:1) (50 ml) for 4 hours. When the reaction is complete, it is concentrated under vacuum and the  
30 residue dissolved in 50 ml of cold water. Neutralization with glacial acetic acid affords a solid which is filtered off and washed with water to give 2.5 g of brown solid; slightly soluble in water; mass spectrum (CI) 200 (M<sup>+</sup>1).

-77-

Example 1

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dichlorobenzamide

To a solution of 0.30 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 0.208 ml of triethylamine in 10 ml of dichloromethane is added, under argon, 0.251 g of 3,4-dichlorobenzoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred overnight and concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The residue is dissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, 2N citric acid, NaHCO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residual yellow solid crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.254 g of crystals, m.p. 154°-160°C.

15

Example 2

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide

A solution of 0.307 g of 2-chlorophenylacetic acid in 3 ml of thionyl chloride is stirred 2 hours at room temperature. The excess thionyl chloride is removed under vacuum and 5 ml of toluene added and removed (under vacuum) three times. The residue is dissolved in 5 ml of dichloromethane and 0.3 ml of triethylamine. To the solution is added (under argon) 0.49 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and the mixture stirred overnight. The volatiles are removed under vacuum and the residue dissolved in ethyl acetate. The solution is washed with 1N HCl, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub> solution, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residual solid is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.36 g of tan crystals, m.p. 178°-180°C.

- 78 -

Example 3

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

As described for Example 1, 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine (0.001 ml) is reacted with 2-methylbenzoyl chloride in dichloromethane to give the product. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives crystals, m.p. 181°-182°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 1.

Ex. No.	
4	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-furanecarboxamide, beige solid.
15	
5	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4- <u>tert</u> -butylbenzamide, m.p. 182-184°C.
20	
6	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-(n-butyl)benzamide, m.p. 152-154°C.
25	
7	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide, m.p. 185-187°C.
30	
8	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 170-172°C.
35	
9	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 166-168°C.
40	
10	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 216-220°C.
45	

11 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide, m.p. 202-204°C.

5 12 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]benzeneacetamide, m.p. 148-150°C.

10 13 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide, m.p. 60-63°C. (white foam)

15 14 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 198-200°C.

20 15 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-cyclohexenecarboxamide, m.p. 194-196°C.

25 16 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

30 17 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide

35 18 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide

40 19 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluorobenzamide

20 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluorobenzamide

45 21 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-methylbenzamide

50 22 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-chlorobenzamide

-80-

	23	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide
5	24	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)benzamide
10	25	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethoxybenzamide
15	26	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzamide
20	27	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethoxybenzamide
25	28	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
30	29	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethylbenzamide
35	30	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide
40	31	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
45	32	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
	33	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide

-81-

34 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

5 35 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

10 36 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dimethylbenzamide

15 37 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

20 38 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dimethylbenzamide

25 39 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4,6-trichlorobenzamide

30 40 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-difluorobenzamide

35 41 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-difluorobenzamide

40 42 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-difluorobenzamide

45 43 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

44 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide

45 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-difluorobenzamide

50

-82-

46 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 47 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

10 48 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide

15 49 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

20 50 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

25 51 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

30 52 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

35 53 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-fluorobenzamide

40 54 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-5-fluorobenzamide

45 55 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

50 56 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]benzamide

-83-

57 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

5 58 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

10 59 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

15 60 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

20 61 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methoxyphenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

25 62 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

30 63 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-methylphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

35 64 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

40 65 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylphenyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

45 66 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

50 67 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

-84-

	68	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide m.p. 256-260°C.
5	69	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide
10	70	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide, m.p. 188-191°C.
15	71	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide
20	72	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide
25	73	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide
30	74	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-benzamide
35	75	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide
40	76	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophenecarboxamide
45	77	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-furane-carboxamide
50	78	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-dichlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

-85-

79 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-dichlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

5 80 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3,5-dichlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

10 81 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide

15 82 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzene-acetamide

20 83 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)-benzamide

25 84 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)-benzamide

30 85 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

35 86 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

40 87 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

45 88 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3,5-dimethylbenzamide

-86-

	89	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide
5		N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chloro-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide
10	90	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
15	91	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
20	92	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

Example 93

25 2,4-Dichloro-N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]benzamide

To a cooled (ice bath) solution of 0.245 g (0.8 mmol) of 2-chloro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 167  $\mu$ l (1.2 mmol) of 30 triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 140  $\mu$ l (1 mmol) of 2,4-dichlorobenzoyl chloride. The solution is stirred under argon at room temperature overnight and diluted with 60 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with 20 ml each of 2N-citric acid, H<sub>2</sub>O, 1M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, 35 brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residue crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 0.315 g of white crystals, m.p. 187-189°C.

-87-

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 93.

	<u>Ex. No.</u>	
5	94	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide, m.p. 186-188°C.
10	95	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide m.p. 245-248°C.
15	96	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide m.p. 169-170°C.
20	97	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide
25	98	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dichlorobenzamide
30	99	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide
35	100	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluorobenzamide
40	101	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-methylbenzamide
45	102	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-chlorobenzamide
50	103	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide

-88-

	104	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide
5	105	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide
10	106	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)benzamide
15	107	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethoxybenzamide
20	108	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethoxybenzamide
25	109	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methoxy-4-chlorobenzamide
30	110	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
35	111	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
40	112	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide
45	113	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dimethylbenzamide
50	114	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide

-89-

115 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophene-carboxamide

5 116 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophene-carboxamide

10 117 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-furane-carboxamide

15 118 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-furane-carboxamide

20 119 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzene-acetamide

25 120 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzene-acetamide

30 121 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophene-acetamide

35 122 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

40 123 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

45 124 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-3-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

50

-90-

	125	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-dimethylbenzamide
5	126	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide
10	127	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dimethylbenzamide
15	128	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4,6-trichlorobenzamide
20	129	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-difluorobenzamide
25	130	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-difluorobenzamide
30	131	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3,5-difluorobenzamide
35	132	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
40	133	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide
45	134	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-difluorobenzamide
50	135	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
	136	N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

-91-

137 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3,5-trichlorobenzamide  
5  
138 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide  
10  
139 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide  
15  
140 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-fluoro-6-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide  
20  
141 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-5-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide  
25  
142 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide  
30  
143 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide  
35  
144 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide  
40  
145 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-dimethylbenzamide  
45  
146 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide  
50

-92-

147 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 148 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

10 149 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-chlorobenzamide

15 150 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

20 151 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

25 152 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide

30 153 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

35 154 N-[4-[(2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

40

Example 155

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a mixture of 287 mg of 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-8H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-8-one in 3 ml of methylene chloride is added 209  $\mu$ l of triethylamine which is cooled to 0°C is added 207.1 mg of 2-methyl-3-fluorobenzoyl chloride. The cooling bath is removed and

-93-

the reaction mixture stirred at room temperature under argon for 18 hours. An additional 50 ml of methylene chloride and 20 ml of water is added and the separated organic layer washed with 2N citric acid, 1M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and 5 brine. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and passed through a short pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated in vacuo to a white foam which is crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to give 305 mg of the desired product as a white solid, m.p. 200-202°C.

10 The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 155.

Example NO.

15	156	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide, m.p. 233-235°C.
20	157	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide
25	158	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-4-fluorobenzamide
30	159	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
35	160	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
40	161	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
	162	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

-94-

	163	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dichlorobenzamide
5	164	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)-benzamide
10	165	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide
15	166	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide
20	167	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophene-carboxamide
25	168	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-furane-carboxamide
30	169	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-chlorobenzamide
35	170	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
40	171	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
45	172	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide
50	173	N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzamide

-95-

174 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 175 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

10 176 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)-benzamide

15 177 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-4-fluorobenzamide

Example 178

4-[(2-(3-Pyridinyl)thiazol-4-ylcarbonyl]5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a cooled (0°C) solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 6 mmol of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 8 ml of dichloromethane is added 2.2 mmol of 2-(3-pyridinyl)thiazole-4-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 25 ml of water. The organic layer is separated, washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, 1 N NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

Example 179

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxamide

A solution of 240 mg of 4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carbonyl chloride in 3 ml of methylene chloride is cooled to 0°C and while stirring 209 µl of triethylamine is added followed by 273 mg of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine. Stirring is continued at room temperature

-96-

under argon for 18 hours. An additional 240 mg of acid chloride and 209  $\mu$ l of triethylamine in 1 ml of methylene chloride is added. Stirring is continued for 2 hours, heating at reflux for 3 hours and stirring at room 5 temperature for 18 hours. The reaction mixture is concentrated in vacuo, diluted with 30 ml of ethyl acetate and washed with 12 ml each of water, 2 N citric acid, 1 M sodium bicarbonate, brine and dried over Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>. The organic layer is concentrated in vacuo to a 10 foam which is purified by chromatography on a silica gel preparative plate using 1:1 ethyl acetate-hexane to give 60 mg of the desired product as a white solid, m.p. 188-192°C.

Example 180

15 N-[4-[5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-  
yl]carbonylphenyl-indole-5-carboxamide

To a solution of 250 mg of indole-5-carboxylic acid in 5 ml of tetrahydrofuran at 0°C is added 327 mg of N,N-carbonyldiimidazole followed by stirring for 2 hours. 20 The volatiles are evaporated to a residue in vacuo. To the residue is added 352 mg of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine followed by heating at 100°C for 18 hours. The temperature is increased to 120°C and heating continued for an 25 additional 4 hours. The reaction mixture is cooled to room temperature and diluted with 40 ml of ethyl acetate which is washed with water. The organic layer is dried with Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> and concentrated in vacuo to a residue which is purified by chromatography on preparative plates by 30 elution with 1:1 ethyl acetate-hexane to give 175 mg of the desired product as a white solid (from ethyl acetate).

Example 181

35 N-[5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-  
yl]carbonyl-2-pyridinyl-2-methylfurane-3-carboxamide

A solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-

-97-

thieno[3,2-*b*]azepine, 5 mmol of *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine and 2.2 mmol of 6-[(3-methyl-2-furanylacetyl)-amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture is 5 diluted with 50 ml of CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and 25 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, 1 N NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solvent is removed and the residue is chromato-graphed on 10 silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane as solvent to give the product as a solid.

Example 182

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-*b*]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-dimethylamino)-pyridine-3-carboxamide

15 A mixture of 1.0 g of *N*-(4-(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-*b*]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl)phenyl]-2-chloropyridine-3-carboxamide, 1 g of K<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, 10 ml of aqueous dimethylamine (40 wt % solution in water) in 25 ml of dimethylsulfoxide is heated at 100°C for 8 hours. 20 The mixture is poured into ice-water and filtered. The solid is washed with water, dried and chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-methanol as solvent to give the product as a solid.

Example 183

25 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-*b*]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

To a solution of 0.50 g of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-*b*]azepine and 342  $\mu$ l of triethylamine in 3.5 ml of dichloromethane 30 cooled to 0°C is added a solution of 0.394 g of 2-chloro-4-fluorobenzoyl chloride in 1.5 ml of dichloro-methane. The mixture is stirred at room temperature overnight under argon and added 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O. The CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> is separated and washed with 20 ml 35 each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine. From the CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> is obtained 0.59 g of white crystals, mp 219-221°C.

- 98 -

Example 184

N-[4-[(5,6-Dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

To a cooled solution of 0.20 g of 4-(2-chloro-5-aminobenzoyl)-5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 137  $\mu$ l of triethylamine in 3 ml of dichloromethane is added a solution of 0.142 g of 5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride in 1 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is stirred under argon for 2 days and diluted with 30 ml of dichloromethane and 15 ml of H<sub>2</sub>O. The organic layer is separated and washed with 15 ml each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate, the filter pad washed with dichloromethane and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate to give 0.215 g of white crystals, m.p. 125-132°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 184.

	<u>Example No.</u>	<u>Compound</u>
20	185	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide
25	186	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide
30	187	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide
35	188	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide
40	189	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide
	190	N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

191 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide

5 192 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methoxybenzamide

10 193 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

15 194 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-(trifluoromethoxy)benzamide

20 195 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

25 196 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

30 197 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

35 198 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-4-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

40 199 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methyl-3-thiophenecarboxamide

45 200 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide

50 201 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide

202 N-[4-[5,6-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide

50 203 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

-100-

204 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

5 205 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

10 206 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

15 207 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

20 208 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

209 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

25 210 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

30 211 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

35 212 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide

40 213 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

45 214 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-(methylthio)benzamide

50 215 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

216 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide

-101-

217 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chloro-6-fluorobenzamide

5 218 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methyl-4-fluorobenzamide

10 219 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide

15 220 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno-[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 183.

20 Ex. No.

221 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

25 222 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

30 223 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide

35 224 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide

40 225 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide

45 226 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide

50 227 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide

50 228 N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide

-102-

229	N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-chloro-5-fluorobenzamide
5 230	N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-(trifluoromethyl)benzamide
10 231	N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methylphenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide
15 232	N-[4-[2-Chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide

Example 233

20 4-[4-(n-Butyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 417 µl of triethylamine is added 474 µl of 4-(n-butoxy)benzoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred for 3 days at room temperature, diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 2 N citric acid, 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate, the pad washed with CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> and the filtrate evaporated. The residue is crystallized from hexane containing a small amount of ethyl acetate. The crystals (0.585 g) are purified by chromatography on silica gel plates with hexane-ethyl acetate (2:1) as solvent to give 0.40 g of crystals (from ethyl acetate-hexane), m.p. 87°C to 90°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described in Example 233.

-103-

<u>Ex. No.</u>	
	234 4-[4-(2-Methylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
5	235 4-[4-(3-Methylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
10	236 4-[4-(Benzylloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
15	237 4-[4-(2-chlorobenzylloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
20	238 4-[4-[2-(Cyclopentyl)ethyloxy]benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
25	239 4-[4-[2-(Cyclohexyl)ethyloxy]benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
30	240 4-[4-(Cyclopentyl)methoxy]benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
35	241 4-[4-(Cyclohexyl)methoxy]benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine
40	242 4-[4-(3-Dimethylbutyloxy)benzoyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

Example 243

35 N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide

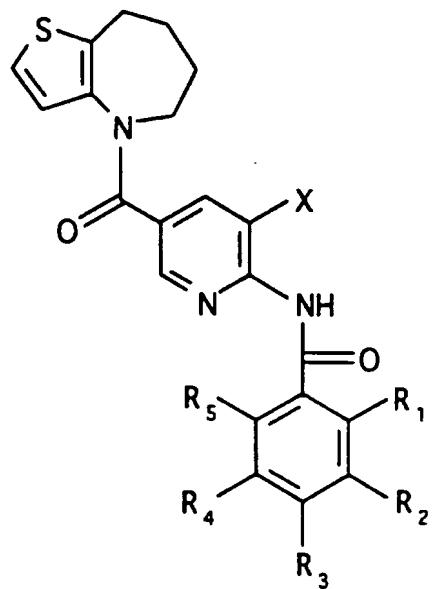
To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 1.11 µl of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.17 g of 6-[(5-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride and the mixture is stirred overnight at room temperature under argon. The mixture is diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane and 20 ml of water and the organic layer separated. The organic layer is washed with 20 ml each of 1 M NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous

-104-

magnesium silicate and the filtrate evaporated, concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give a glass. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.35 g of white crystals, m.p. 178-180°C.

5 As described for Example 243, the following compounds are prepared (Table A).

-105-

Table A

- 106 -

Ex. No	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>	R <sub>4</sub>	R <sub>5</sub>	X
244	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
245	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	H
246	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	H
247	H	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H
248	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
249	F	H	F	H	H	H
250	Br	H	H	H	H	H
251	Cl	H	F	H	H	H
252	Ph	H	H	H	H	H
253	Cl	H	H	Br	H	H
254	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	Br
255	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	Cl
256	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
257	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H
258	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
259	Cl	H	H	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H
260	Cl	H	H	H	F	H
261	Cl	H	H	H	Cl	H
262	Cl	H	H	F	H	H
263		H	H	H	H	H
264		H	H	H	H	H
265	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H
266	Cl	H	H	F	H	Cl
267	Cl	H	F	H	H	Cl
268	Cl	Cl	H	H	H	H
269	Cl	H	H	Cl	H	H
270	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
271	OCF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H

-107-

Ex.No	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>	R <sub>4</sub>	R <sub>5</sub>	X
272	-CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
273	Cl	Cl	H	Cl	H	H
274	-SCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
275	Cl	H	NO <sub>2</sub>	H	H	H
276	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H
277	F	H	H	Cl	H	H
278	Cl	H	H	NH <sub>2</sub>	H	H
279	F	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H
280	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	Cl	H	H
281	Cl	H	H	-SCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H
282	F	H	H	H	CF <sub>3</sub>	H
283	F	H	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H
284	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	F	H	H	H
285	NO <sub>2</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
286	F	H	H	H	H	H
287	Cl	H	NH <sub>2</sub>	H	H	H

- 108 -

Example 288

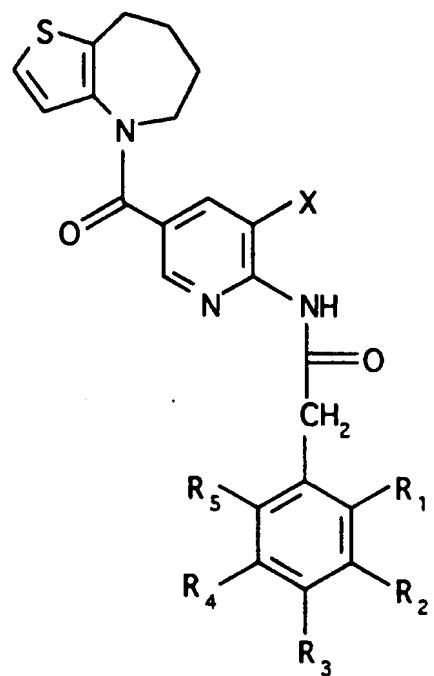
N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide

To a cooled (0°C) mixture of 0.306 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 1.11 µl of triethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 1.2 g of 6-[(2-methylphenylacetyl)amino]pyridine-3-carbonyl chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours and diluted with 50 ml of dichloromethane. The mixture is washed with H<sub>2</sub>O, 1 N NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>O, brine and dried (Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>). The solution is concentrated to dryness under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on silica gel to give the product as a solid.

As described for Example 288, the following compounds are prepared (Table B).

-109-

Table B



- 110 -

Ex. No.	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>	R <sub>4</sub>	R <sub>5</sub>	X
289	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
290	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	Br
291	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	Cl
292	Cl	H	H	H	H	H
293	Cl	H	H	H	H	Br
294	Cl	H	H	H	H	Cl
295	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	H
296	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Br
297	Cl	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
298	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	H
299	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	Br
300	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	Cl
301	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H
302	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	Br
303	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	Cl
304	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H
305	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	Br
306	H	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	Cl
307	H	Cl	H	H	H	H
308	H	Cl	H	H	H	Br
309	H	Cl	H	H	H	Cl
310	H	H	Cl	H	H	H
311	H	H	Cl	H	H	Br
312	H	H	Cl	H	H	Cl
313	F	H	H	H	H	H
314	F	H	H	H	H	Br
315	F	H	H	H	H	Cl
316	H	F	H	H	H	H
317	H	F	H	H	H	Br
318	H	F	H	H	H	Cl
319	H	H	F	H	H	H

-111-

Ex No.	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>	R <sub>4</sub>	R <sub>5</sub>	X
320	H	H	F	H	H	Br
321	H	H	F	H	H	Cl
322	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H
323	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	Br
324	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	Cl

- 112 -

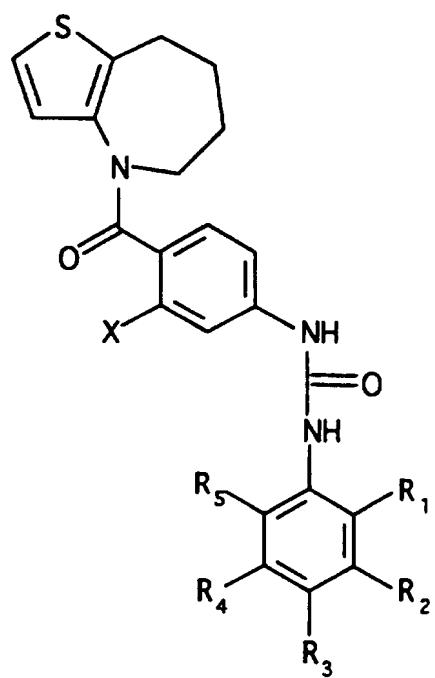
Example 325

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4-[4-[[[2-methylphenyl]-  
aminocarbonylaminolbenzoyl]-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

A mixture of 0.409 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 0.60 g of 2-methylphenylisocyanate in 2 ml of tetrahydrofuran is heated in an oil bath at 110°C for 16 hours. The mixture is concentrated under vacuum and the residue chromatographed on preparative silica gel plates with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.33 g of white crystals, m.p. 179-182°C.

The following compounds are prepared as described for Example 325 (Table C).

-113-

Table C

-114-

EX. NO.	R <sub>1</sub>	R <sub>2</sub>	R <sub>3</sub>	R <sub>4</sub>	R <sub>5</sub>	X
326	CH <sub>3</sub>	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H
327	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	C1
328	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>
329	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	C1	H	H	H
330	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	C1
331	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	C1
332	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	H
333	C1	H	H	H	H	C1
334	C1	H	H	F	H	C1
335	C1	H	H	H	H	H
336	C1	H	F	H	H	C1
337	C1	C1	H	H	H	C1
338	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	C1	H
339	CF <sub>3</sub> O	H	H	H	H	C1
340	CH <sub>3</sub> S	H	H	H	H	C1
341	C1	C1	H	C1	H	CH <sub>3</sub>
342	C1	H	H	H	F	C1
343	H	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	C1
344	H	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	H	H	H
345	CF <sub>3</sub>	H	C1	H	H	C1
346	CH <sub>3</sub> O	H	C1	H	H	C1
347	C1	H	H	H	C1	H
348	C1	H	H	H	C1	C1
349	∅	H	H	H	H	C1
350	∅	H	H	H	H	H
351	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	CH <sub>3</sub>
352	CH <sub>3</sub>	F	H	H	H	C1
353	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	H
354	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	CH <sub>3</sub>
355	CH <sub>3</sub>	H	H	F	H	C1
356	F	H	C1	H	H	H

-115-

Ex.No.	R1	R2	R3	R4	R5	X
357	F	H	H	Cl	H	Cl
358	F	H	H	H	Cl	Cl

Example 359

5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4-[4-[(methylphenylamino)-carbonyl]aminobenzoyl]-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a chilled (0°C) solution of 0.409 g of 4-(4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 432 µl of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added under argon 0.336 g of N-phenyl-N-methylcarbamoyl chloride. The mixture is stirred overnight and an additional 0.672 g of N-phenyl-N-methylcarbamoyl chloride, 864 µl N,N-diisopropyl-ethylamine and 10 ml of toluene added. The mixture refluxed 16 hours and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue is chromatographed on silica gel with ethyl acetate-hexane (1:1) as solvent to give a solid. Crystallization from ethyl acetate-hexane gives 0.34 g of off-white crystals, m.p. 160-162°C.

Example 360

N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 4-(2-chloro-4-aminobenzoyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine and 5 mmol of triethylamine in 10 ml of dichloromethane under argon is reacted with [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbonyl chloride for 16 hours at room temperature to give the product as a solid.

Example 361

4-[5-(2-Pyridinyl)thien-2-ylcarbonyl]-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

To a cooled solution (0°C) of 0.23 g of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 523 µl of N,N-diisopropylethylamine in 5 ml of dichloromethane is added 0.436 g of 5-(2-pyridinyl)thiophene-2-carbonyl

-116-

chloride. The mixture is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours under argon and diluted with 40 ml of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and 20 ml of water. The organic layer is separated and washed with 20 ml each of 1 N  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , brine and dried ( $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ). The solution is filtered through a thin pad of hydrous magnesium silicate and the filtrate concentrated to dryness. The residue is crystallized from ethyl acetate plus a small amount of hexane to give 0.485 g of tan crystals, m.p. 150-154°C.

Example 362

4-([1,1'-Biphenyl]-4-ylcarbonyl)-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine

As described for Example 1, a solution of 2 mmol of 5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepine, 5 mmol of triethylamine and 2.1 mmol of [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-carbonyl chloride in 10 ml of  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  is stirred at room temperature for 16 hours to give the product as a solid.

The subject compounds of the present invention are tested for biological activity.

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

Rat liver plasma membranes expressing the vasopressin V<sub>1</sub> receptor subtypes are isolated by sucrose density gradient according to the method described by Lesko et al., (1973). These membranes are quickly suspended in 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer, pH 7.4, containing 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) and 0.1 mM phenyl-methylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and kept frozen at -70°C until used in subsequent binding experiments. For binding experiments, the following is added to the wells of a ninety-six well format microtiter plate: 100  $\mu\text{l}$  of 100.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 10.0 mM  $\text{MgCl}_2$ , 0.2% heat inactivated BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %, 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu\text{l}$  of [ $\text{phenylalanyl-3,4,5-}^3\text{H}$ ] vasopressin (S.A. 45.1 Ci/mmole) at 0.8 nM, and the

-117-

reaction initiated by the addition of 80  $\mu$ l of tissue membranes containing 20  $\mu$ g of tissue protein. The plates are kept undisturbed on the bench top at room temperature for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific samples are assayed in the presence of 0.1  $\mu$ M of the unlabeled antagonist phenylalanylvasopressin, added in 20.0  $\mu$ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200  $\mu$ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC<sub>50</sub> values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Binding Assay to Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors

Medullary tissues from rat kidneys are dissected out, cut into small pieces and let soak in a 0.154 mM sodium chloride solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA with many changes of the liquid phase, until the solution is clear of blood. The tissue is homogenized in a 0.25 M sucrose solution containing 1.0 mM EDTA and 0.1 mM PMSF using a Potter-Elvehjem homogenizer with a teflon pestle. The homogenate is filtered through several layers (4 layers) of cheese cloth. The filtrate is rehomogenized using a dounce homogenizer, with a tight fitting pestle. The final homogenate is centrifuged at 1500  $\times$  g for 15 min. The nuclear pellet is discarded and the supernatant fluid recentrifuged at 40,000  $\times$  g for 30 min. The resulting pellet formed contains a dark inner part with the exterior, slightly pink. The pink outer part is suspended in a small amount of 50.0 mM Tris-HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry's method (Lowry et al, J. Biol. Chem., 1953). The membrane suspension is stored at -70°C, in 50.0 mM Tris-HCl, containing 0.2% inactivated BSA and 0.1 mM PMSF in

-118-

aliquots of 1.0 ml containing 10.0 mg protein per ml of suspension until use in subsequent binding experiments.

For binding experiments, the following is added in  $\mu$ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0  $\mu$ l of 100.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu$ l of [<sup>3</sup>H] Arginine<sup>8</sup>, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmmole) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0  $\mu$ l of tissue membranes (200.0  $\mu$ g tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min. to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0  $\mu$ M of unlabeled ligand, added in 20  $\mu$ l volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0  $\mu$ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200  $\mu$ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC<sub>50</sub> values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

**Radioligand Binding Experiments with Human Platelet Membranes**

Platelet Source: Hudson Valley Blood Services, Westchester Medical Center, Valhalla, NY.

**Platelet Membrane Preparation:**

Frozen platelet rich plasma (PRP), received from the Hudson Valley Blood Services are thawed to room temperature. The tubes containing the PRP are centrifuged at 16,000 x g for 10 min. at 4°C and the superna-

-119-

tant fluid discarded. The platelets resuspended in an equal volume of 50.0 mM Tris•HCl, pH 7.5 containing 120 mM NaCl and 20.0 mM EDTA. The suspension is recentrifuged at 16,000  $\times$  g for 10 min. This washing step is repeated one more time. The wash is discarded and the lysed pellets homogenized in low ionic strength buffer of Tris•HCl, 5.0 mM, pH 7.5 containing 5.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 39,000  $\times$  g for 10 min. The resulting pellet is resuspended in Tris•HCl buffer, 70.0 mM, pH 7.5 and recentrifuged at 39,000  $\times$  g for 10 min. The final pellet is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer pH 7.4 containing 120 mM NaCl and 5.0 mM HCl to give 1.0-2.0 mg protein per ml of suspension.

Binding to Vasopressin V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet Membranes:

In wells of a 96 well format microtiter plate, add 100  $\mu$ l of 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% BSA and a mixture of protease inhibitors (aprotinin, leupeptin etc.). Then add 20  $\mu$ l of [<sup>3</sup>H]Ligand: (Manning or Arg<sup>8</sup>Vasopressin), to give final concentrations ranging from 0.01 to 10.0 nM. Initiate the binding by adding 80.0  $\mu$ l of platelet suspension (approx. 100  $\mu$ g protein). Mix all reagents by pipetting the mixture up and down a few times. Non-specific binding is measured in the presence of 1.0  $\mu$ M of unlabeled ligand (Manning or Arg<sup>8</sup>Vasopressin). Let the mixture stand undisturbed at room temperature for ninety (90) min. Upon this time, rapidly filter off the incubate under vacuum suction over GF/B filters, using a Brandel® Harvester. Determine the radioactivity caught on the filter disks by the addition of liquid scintillant and counting in a liquid scintillator

-120-

Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2)  
Transfected with the cDNA expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub>  
Vasopressin Receptor

Membrane Preparation

Flasks of 175 ml capacity, containing attached cells grown to confluence are cleared of culture medium by aspiration. The flasks containing the attached cells are rinsed with 2 x 5 ml of phosphate buffered saline (PBS) and the liquid aspirated off each time. Finally, 5 ml of an enzyme free dissociation Hank's based solution (Specialty Media, Inc., Lafayette, NJ) is added and the flasks are left undisturbed for 2 min. The content of all flasks is poured into a centrifuge tube and the cells pelleted at 300 x g for 15 min. The Hank's based solution is aspirated off and the cells homo-genized with a polytron at setting #6 for 10 sec in 10.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer, pH 7.4 containing 0.25 M sucrose and 1.0 mM EDTA. The homogenate is centrifuged at 1500 x g for 10 min to remove ghost membranes. The supernatant fluid is centrifuged at 100,000 x g for 60 min to pellet the receptor protein.. Upon completion, the pellet is resuspended in a small volume of 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer, pH 7.4. The protein content is determined by the Lowry method and the receptor membranes are suspended in 50.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.1 mM phenylmethylsulfonylfluoride (PMSF) and 0.2% bovine serum albumin (BSA) to give 2.5 mg receptor protein per ml of suspension.

-121-

Receptor Binding

For binding experiments, the following is added in  $\mu$ l volume to wells of a 96 well format of a microtiter plate: 100.0  $\mu$ l of 100.0 mM Tris•HCl buffer containing 0.2% heat inactivated BSA, 10.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> and a mixture of protease inhibitors: leupeptin, 1.0 mg %; aprotinin, 1.0 mg %; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg %; trypsin inhibitor, 10.0 mg % and 0.1 mM PMSF, 20.0  $\mu$ l of [<sup>3</sup>H] Arginine<sup>8</sup>, vasopressin (S.A. 75.0 Ci/mmol) at 0.8 nM and the reaction initiated by the addition of 80.0  $\mu$ l of tissue membranes (200.0  $\mu$ g tissue protein). The plates are left undisturbed on the bench top for 120 min to reach equilibrium. Non-specific binding is assessed in the presence of 1.0  $\mu$ M of unlabeled ligand, added in 20  $\mu$ l volume. For test compounds, these are solubilized in 50% dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and added in 20.0  $\mu$ l volume to a final incubation volume of 200  $\mu$ l. Upon completion of binding, the content of each well is filtered off, using a Brandel® cell Harvester (Gaithersburg, MD). The radioactivity trapped on the filter disk by the ligand-receptor complex is assessed by liquid scintillation counting in a Packard LS Counter, with an efficiency of 65% for tritium. The data are analyzed for IC<sub>50</sub> values by the LUNDON-2 program for competition (LUNDON SOFTWARE, OH).

Vasopressin V<sub>2</sub> Antagonist Activity in Conscious Hydrated Rats

Conscious hydrated rats are treated with compounds under study from 0.1 to 100 mg/kg orally or vehicle. Two to four rats are used for each compound. One hour later, arginine vasopressin (AVP, antidiuretic hormone, ADH) dissolved in peanut oil is administered at 0.4  $\mu$ g/kg intraperitoneally. Two rats in each test would not receive arginine vasopressin but only the vehicle (peanut oil) to serve as water-loading control. Twenty

-122-

minutes later each rat is given 30 mL/kg of deionized water orally by gavage and is placed individually in a metabolic cage equipped with a funnel and a graduated glass cylinder to collect urine for four hours. Urine volume is measured and osmolality analyzed by use of a Fiske One-Ten osmometer (Fiske Assoc., Norwood, MA USA). Urinary sodium, potassium, and chloride are analyzed by use of ion-specific electrodes in a Beckman E3 (Electrolyte 3) Analyzer.

In the following results, decreased urine volume and decreased osmolality relative to AVP-control indicates activity. The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 3.

#### Vasopressin V<sub>1</sub> Antagonist Activity in Conscious Rats

Conscious rats are restrained in a supine position with elastic tape. The area at the base of the tail is locally anesthetized by subcutaneous infiltration with 2% procaine (0.2 ml). Using aseptic technique the ventral caudal tail artery is isolated and a cannula made of PE 10 and 20 (heat-fused) tubing is passed into the lower abdominal aorta. The cannula is secured, heparinized (1000 i.u./cc), sealed and the wound closed with one or two stitches of Dexon 4-0. The caudal vein is also cannulated in the same manner for intravenous drug administration. The duration of the surgery is approximately 5 minutes. Additional local anesthesia (2% procaine or lidocaine) is provided as needed.

The animals are placed in plastic restraining cages in an upright position. The cannula is attached to a Statham P23Db pressure transducer and pulsatile blood pressure is recorded. Increase of systolic blood pressure responses to arginine vasopressin 0.01 and 0.2 international unit (I.U.) (350 I.U.=1 mg) injections are recorded prior to any drug (compound) administration,

-123-

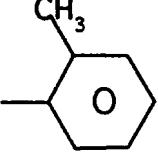
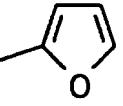
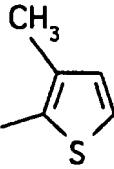
after which each rat is dosed orally with compounds under study 0.1-100 mg/kg (10 cc/kg) or intravenously 0.1-30 mg/kg (1 cc/kg). The vasopressin injections are repeated 30, 60, 90, 120, 180, 240 and 300 min. later. Percentage of antagonism by the compound is calculated using the pre-drug vasopressin vasopressor response as 100%.

The results of this test on representative compounds of this invention are shown in Table 4.

-124-

Table 1

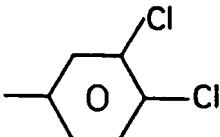
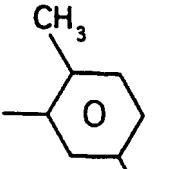
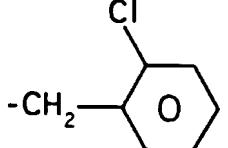
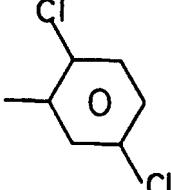
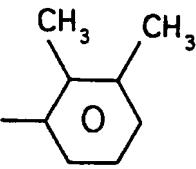
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Ex. No.	R	Ar	IC <sub>50</sub> ( $\mu$ M)	
			V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
3	H		0.077	0.023
4	H		0.40	1.8
5	H		19%(50 $\mu$ M)	21.4
6	H		50	3.4
7	H		0.059	0.138

-125-

Table 1 (cont'd)

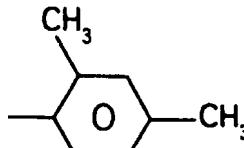
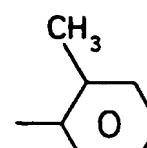
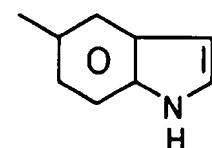
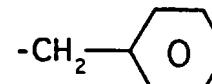
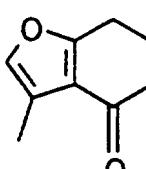
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Ex. No.	R	Ar	<u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>	
			V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
1	H		1.65	0.44
8	H		0.20	0.12
2	H		0.0037	0.0026
9	H		0.21	0.034
10	H		0.23	0.052

-126-

Table 1 (cont'd)

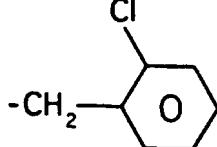
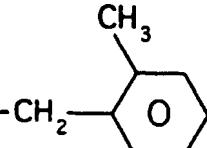
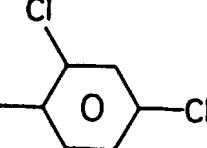
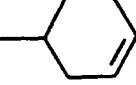
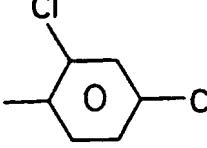
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Ex. No.	R	Ar	<u>IC<sub>50</sub>(<math>\mu</math>M)</u>	
			V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
11	H		0.28	0.060
96	Cl		0.088	0.010
180	H		8.0	0.37
12	H		0.26	0.036
179	H		1.30	5.5

-127-

Table 1 (cont'd)

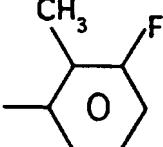
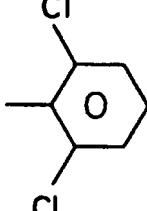
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Ex. No.	R	Ar	<u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>	
			V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
99	Cl		0.020	0.0033
13	H		0.014	0.010
14	H		0.12	0.03
15	H		0.065	0.055
93	Cl		0.23	0.019

-128-

Table 1 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Ex. No.	R	Ar	<u>IC<sub>50</sub>(<math>\mu</math>M)</u>	
			V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
94	Cl		0.16	0.010
95	Cl		0.19*	0.004**

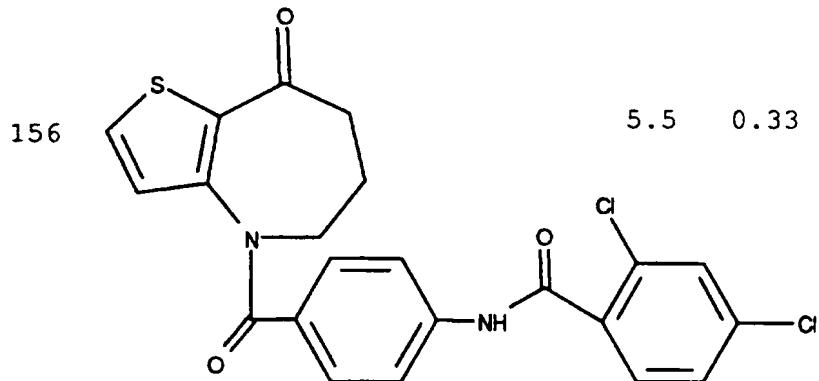
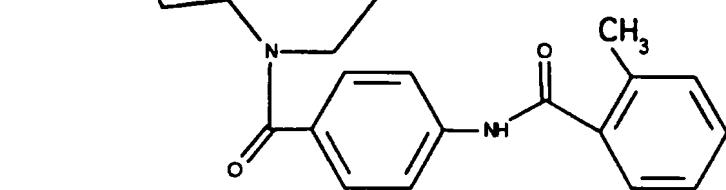
-129-

Table 2

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

<u>EX. NO.</u>	<u>STRUCTURE</u>	<u>V<sub>1</sub></u> <u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>	<u>V<sub>2</sub></u> <u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>
----------------	------------------	---	---



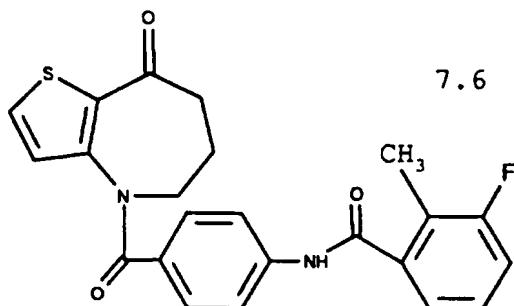
-130-

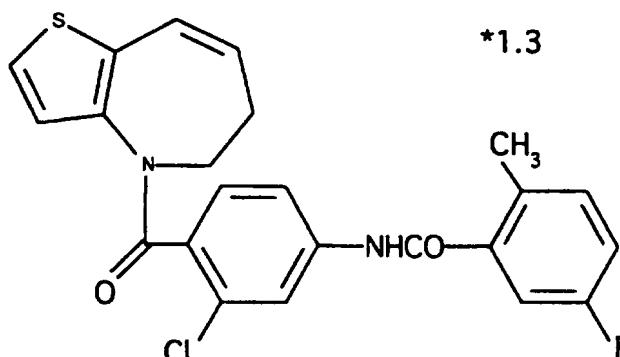
Table 2 (cont'd)

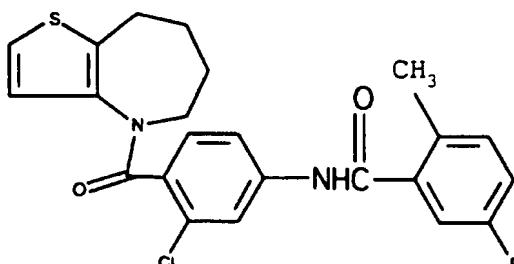
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

<u>EX. NO.</u>	<u>STRUCTURE</u>	<u>V<sub>1</sub></u>	<u>V<sub>2</sub></u>
		<u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>	<u>IC<sub>50</sub> (μM)</u>

155  7.6 0.25

184  \*1.3 0.030

70  0.11\* 0.0034\*\*

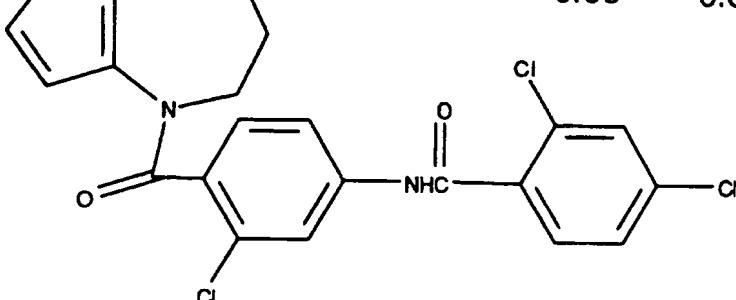
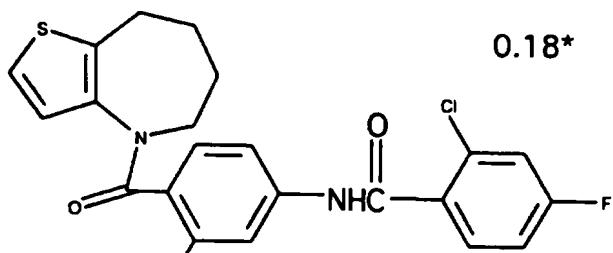
-131-

Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor  
Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

### Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

<u>EX. NO.</u>	<u>STRUCTURE</u>	v <sub>1</sub>	v <sub>2</sub>
		IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)



-132-

Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO.	STRUCTURE	V <sub>1</sub>	V <sub>2</sub>
		IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)	IC <sub>50</sub> (μM)
233		2% (10 μM)	82% (10 μM)

243		0.068	0.0061
-----	--	-------	--------

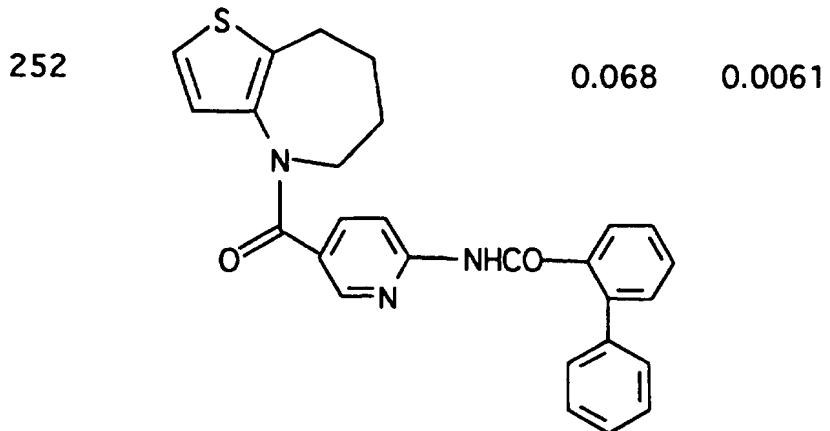
-133-

Table 2 (cont'd)

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors and Rat Kidney Medullary V<sub>2</sub> Receptors or \*Binding to V<sub>1</sub> Receptor Subtype in Human Platelet and \*\*Binding to Membranes of Mouse Fibroblast Cell Line (LV-2) Transfected with the cDNA Expressing the Human V<sub>2</sub> Receptor

Binding Assay to Rat Hepatic V<sub>1</sub> Receptors

EX. NO.	STRUCTURE	V <sub>1</sub> <u>IC<sub>50</sub> (uM)</u>	V <sub>2</sub> <u>IC<sub>50</sub> (uM)</u>
---------	-----------	---	---



-134-

**Table 3**  
**Vasopressin V<sub>2</sub> Antagonist Activity in Conscious**  
**Hydrated Rats**

Ex. No.	Dose P.O. mg/kg	N	Urine Volume ml/4 hours	Osmolality mOsm/kg
3	100	2	10	1081
7	100	2	6.2	
2	10	4	2.8	
11	30	2	5	1420
96	30	2	16.1	465
99	30	2	10	1135
13	30	2	9.5	516
14	30	2	3.5	1432
15	30	2	4.6	1397
93	10	2	7.6	1056
94	10	2	8.8	910
157	10	2	6.5	1070
156	10	2	3.8	1266
155	10	2	4.5	1053
95	10	2	5	1122
70	10	2	4	1070
183	10	2	8.3	512
68	10	2	10.3	647

-135-

Table 4  
Vasopressin (VAS) Vasopressor Response

Ex. No.	Dose (mg/kg)	Max. % Inhibition	Time (Min)
2	10 iv	7.6	60
9	30 po	17	180
10	30 po	i	i
96	10 iv	65	90
99	10 iv	58	90
13	10 iv	80	60
14	20 iv	61	120
15	10 iv	69	30
93	20 iv	77	90
94	20 iv	74	90
157	20 iv	66	60
156	20 iv	63	240
155	20 iv	62	60
95	10 iv	61	30
70	20 iv	67	120
183	30 iv	78	120
68	20 iv	50	120

#### Oxytocin Receptor Binding

##### (a) Membrane Preparation

Female Sprague-Dawley rats weighing approximately 200-250 g are injected intramuscularly (i.m.) with 0.3 mg/kg of body weight of diethylstilbestrol (DES). The rats are sacrificed 18 hours later under pentobarbital anesthesia. The uteri are dissected out, cleaned of fat and connective tissues and rinsed in 50 ml of normal saline. The tissue pooled from six rats is homogenized in 50 ml of 0.01 mM Tris.HCl, containing 0.5 mM dithiothreitol and 1.0 mM EDTA, adjusted to pH 7.4,

-136-

using a polytron at setting 6 with three passes of 10 sec each. The homogenate is passed through two (2) layers of cheesecloth and the filtrate centrifuged at 1000 x g for 10 min. The clear supernatant is removed and re-centrifuged at 165,000 x g for 30 min. The resulting pellet containing the oxytocin receptors is resuspended in 50.0 mM Tris.HCl containing 5.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub> at pH 7.4, to give a protein concentration of 2.5 mg/ml of tissue suspension. This preparation is used in subsequent binding assays with [<sup>3</sup>H]Oxytocin.

(b) Radioligand Binding

Binding of 3,5-[<sup>3</sup>H]Oxytocin ([<sup>3</sup>H]OT) to its receptors is done in microtiter plates using [<sup>3</sup>H]OT, at various concentrations, in an assay buffer of 50.0 mM Tris.HCl, pH 7.4 and containing 5.0 mM MgCl<sub>2</sub>, and a mixture of protease inhibitors: BSA, 0.1 mg; aprotinin, 1.0 mg; 1,10-phenanthroline, 2.0 mg; trypsin, 10.0 mg; and PMSF, 0.3 mg per 100 ml of buffer solution. Non-specific binding is determined in the presence of 1.0 uM unlabeled OT. The binding reaction is terminated after 60 min., at 22°C, by rapid filtration through glass fiber filters using a Brandel® cell harvester (Biomedical Research and Development Laboratories, Inc., Gaithersburg, MD). Competition experiments are conducted at equilibrium using 1.0 nM [<sup>3</sup>H]OT and varying the concentration of the displacing agents. The concentrations of agent displacing 50% of [<sup>3</sup>H]OT at its sites (IC<sub>50</sub>) are calculated by a computer assisted LUNDON-2 program (LUNDON SOFTWARE INC., Ohio, USA).

The results of this assay on representative examples are shown in Table 5.

-137-

Table 5  
Oxytocin Binding Assay

Ex. No.	Conc. (uM)	% Inhibition	IC <sub>50</sub> (uM)
9	10	60	5.2
13	10	95	0.68
68	10	55	
70	10	97	0.51
93	10	83	1.8
94	10	97	0.95
95	10	85	1.38
96	1.25	58	0.27
155	10	16	
156	10	0	
157	10	29	
183	10	86	0.6
184	10	76	
233	10	93	0.95
243	10	96	0.34
252	2.5	93	0.17

The compounds of the present invention can be used in the form of salts derived from pharmaceutically or physiologically acceptable acids or bases. These salts include, but are not limited to, the following: salts with inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, phosphoric acid and, as the case may be, such organic acids as acetic acid, oxalic acid, succinic acid, and maleic acid. Other salts include salts with alkali metals or alkaline earth metals, such as sodium, potassium, calcium or magnesium or with organic bases. The compounds can also be used in the form of esters, carbamates and other conventional "pro-drug" forms, which, when administered in such form,

-138-

convert to the active moiety in vivo.

When the compounds are employed for the above utilities, they may be combined with one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, for example, solvents, diluents and the like, and may be administered orally in such forms as tablets, capsules, dispersible powders, granules, or suspensions containing, for example, from about 0.05 to 5% of suspending agent, syrups containing, for example, from about 10 to 50% of sugar, and elixirs containing, for example, from about 20 to 50% ethanol, and the like, or parenterally in the form of sterile injectable solutions or suspensions containing from about 0.05 to 5% suspending agent in an isotonic medium. Such pharmaceutical preparations may contain, for example, from about 25 to about 90% of the active ingredient in combination with the carrier, more usually between about 5% and 60% by weight.

The effective dosage of active ingredient employed may vary depending on the particular compound employed, the mode of administration and the severity of the condition being treated. However, in general, satisfactory results are obtained when the compounds of the invention are administered at a daily dosage of from about 0.5 to about 500 mg/kg of animal body weight, preferably given in divided doses two to four times a day, or in a sustained release form. For most large mammals the total daily dosage is from about 1 to 100 mg, preferably from about 2 to 80 mg. Dosage forms suitable for internal use comprise from about 0.5 to 500 mg of the active compound in intimate admixture with a solid or liquid pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. This dosage regimen may be adjusted to provide the optimal therapeutic response. For example, several divided doses may be administered daily or the dose may be proportionally reduced as indicated by the exigencies of the therapeutic situation.

-139-

These active compounds may be administered orally as well as by intravenous, intramuscular, or subcutaneous routes. Solid carriers include starch, lactose, dicalcium phosphate, microcrystalline cellulose, sucrose and kaolin, while liquid carriers include sterile water, polyethylene glycols, non-ionic surfactants and edible oils such as corn, peanut and sesame oils, as are appropriate to the nature of the active ingredient and the particular form of administration desired. Adjuvants customarily employed in the preparation of pharmaceutical compositions may be advantageously included, such as flavoring agents, coloring agents, preserving agents, and antioxidants, for example, vitamin E, ascorbic acid, BHT and BHA.

The preferred pharmaceutical compositions from the standpoint of ease of preparation and administration are solid compositions, particularly tablets and hard-filled or liquid-filled capsules. Oral administration of the compounds is preferred.

These active compounds may also be administered parenterally or intraperitoneally. Solutions or suspensions of these active compounds as a free base or pharmacologically acceptable salt can be prepared in water suitably mixed with a surfactant such as hydroxypropylcellulose. Dispersions can also be prepared in glycerol, liquid, polyethylene glycols and mixtures thereof in oils. Under ordinary conditions of storage and use, these preparations contain a preservative to prevent the growth of microorganisms.

The pharmaceutical forms suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersions. In all cases, the form must be sterile and must be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exists. It must be stable under conditions of manufacture and

-140-

storage and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacterial and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol (e.g., glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol), suitable mixtures thereof, and vegetable oil.

The new tricyclic non-peptide vasopressin antagonists of this invention are useful in treating conditions where decreased vasopressin levels are desired, such as in congestive heart failure, in disease conditions with excess renal water reabsorption and in conditions with increased vascular resistance and coronary vasoconstriction.

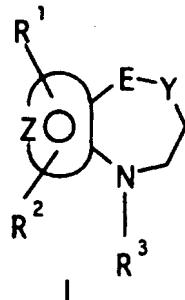
In particular, the vasopressin antagonists of this invention are therapeutically useful in the treatment and/or prevention of hypertension, cardiac insufficiency, coronary vasospasm, cardiac ischemia, renal vasospasm, liver cirrhosis, congestive heart failure, nephritic syndrome, brain edema, cerebral ischemia, cerebral hemorrhage-stroke, thrombosis-bleeding and abnormal states of water retention.

In particular, the oxytocin antagonists of this invention are useful in the prevention of preterm labor and premature birth which is a significant cause of infant health problems and infant mortality.

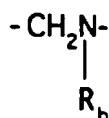
-141-

What is claimed is:

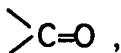
1. A compound selected from those of the general Formula I:



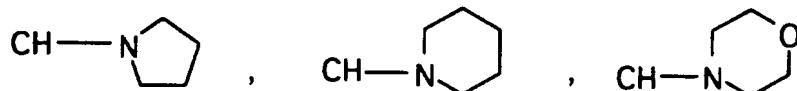
wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,



-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),



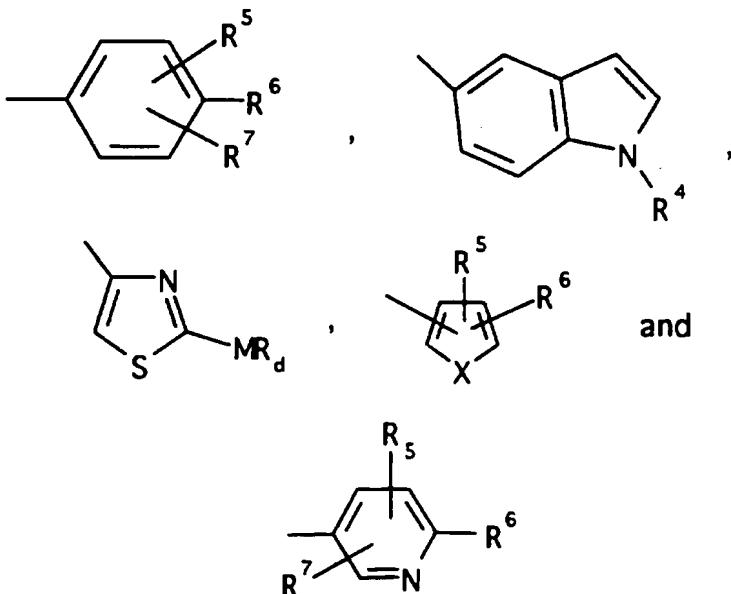
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

and the moiety:

-142-

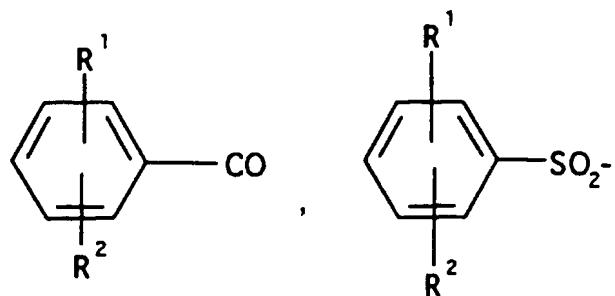


represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, halogen, or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy; R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



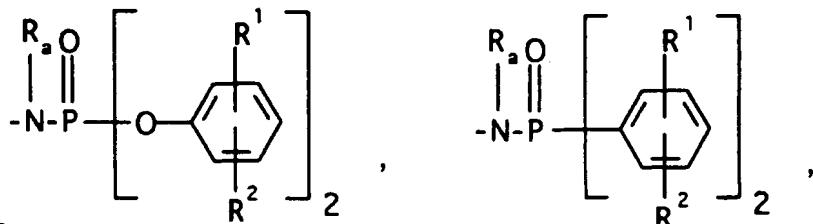
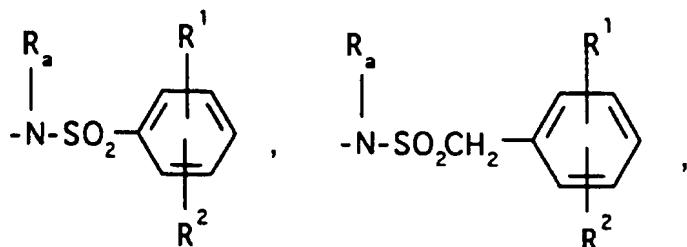
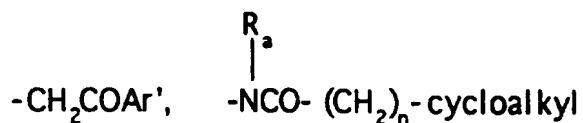
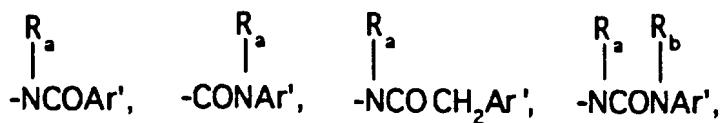
wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-143-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

-144-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-N-C(=O)$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

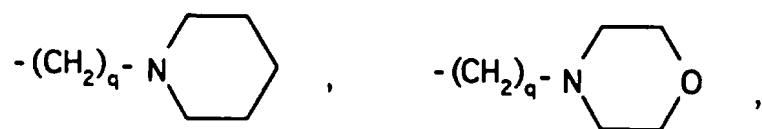
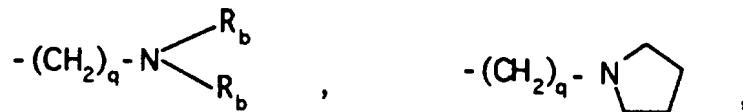
$-N-C-O$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-N-C(=O)$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

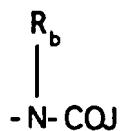
wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl, cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and  $R_a$  is independently

-145-

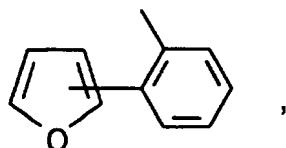
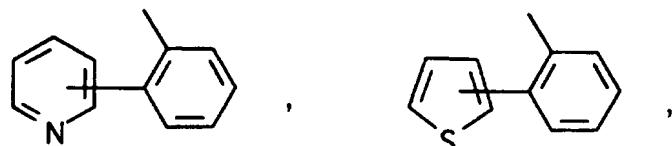
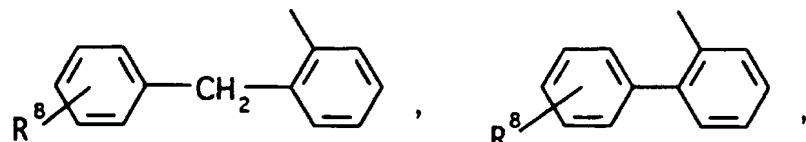
selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

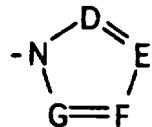


wherein J is R<sub>a</sub>, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:



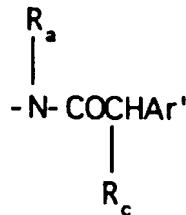
-146-

or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

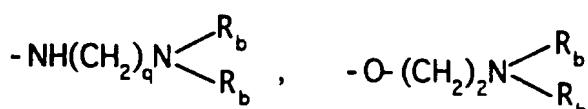
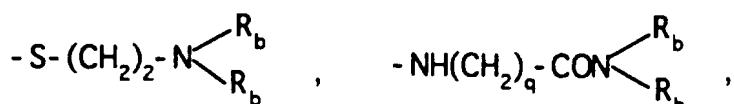
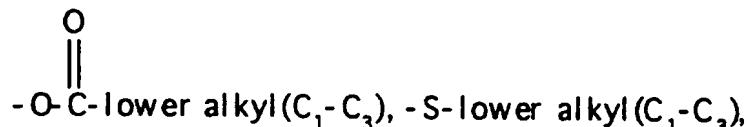


wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:



wherein R<sub>c</sub> is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



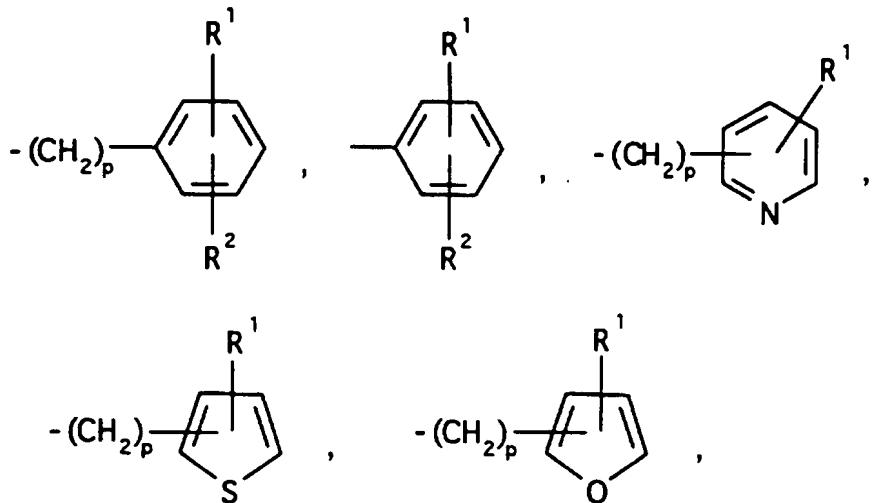
wherein R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:

-147-

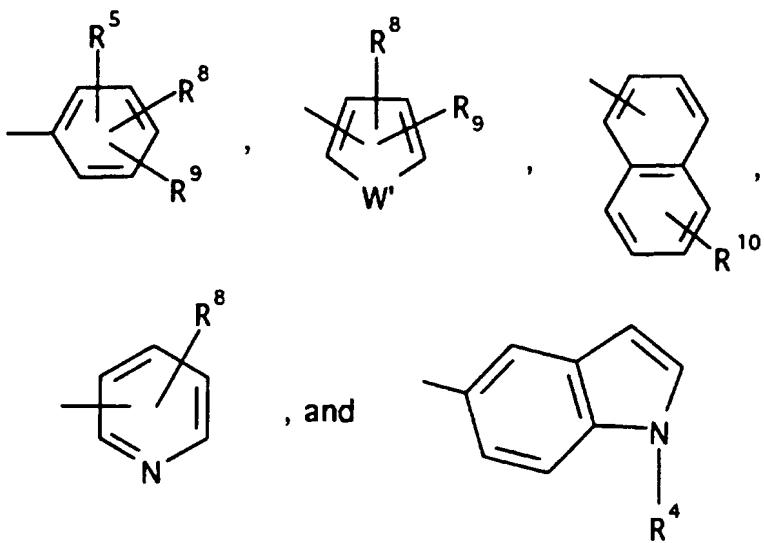
 $-M-R_d$ 

wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub> and the moiety  $-M-R_d$  wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



-148-

wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and; R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyrimidine heterocyclic ring.

3. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyridazine heterocyclic ring.

4. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrrole ring.

5. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:

-149-



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic furane ring.

6. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiophene ring.

7. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrazole ring.

8. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic oxazole ring.

9. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:



is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic isoxazole ring.

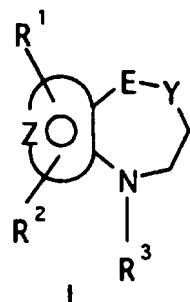
10. A compound according to Claim 1 wherein the moiety:

-150-

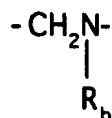


is an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiazole ring.

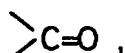
11. A compound selected from those of the formula:



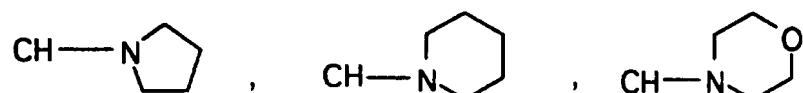
wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,



-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-151-



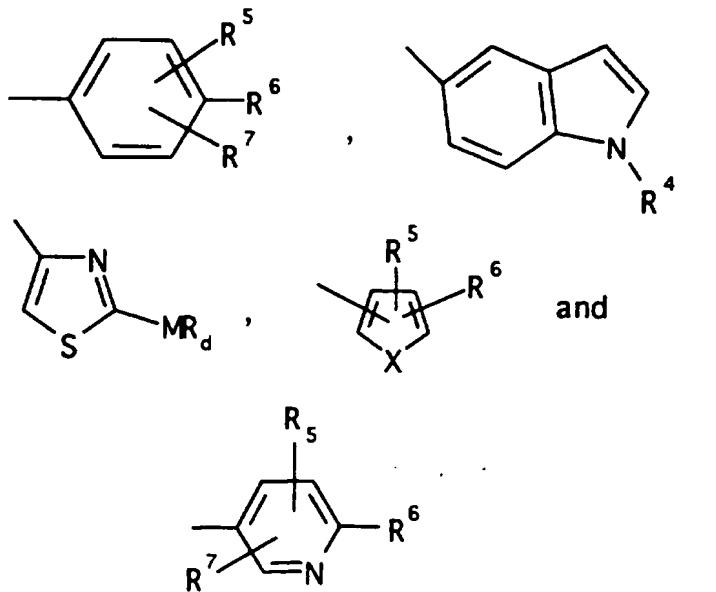
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

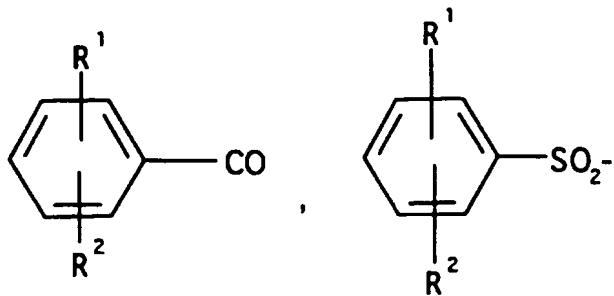
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyrimidine heterocyclic ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkylamino;

10 R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



15 wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>;  
R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

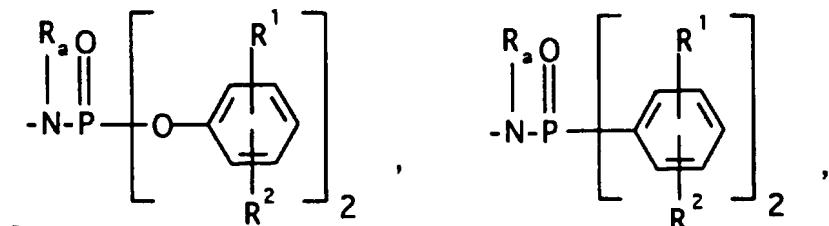
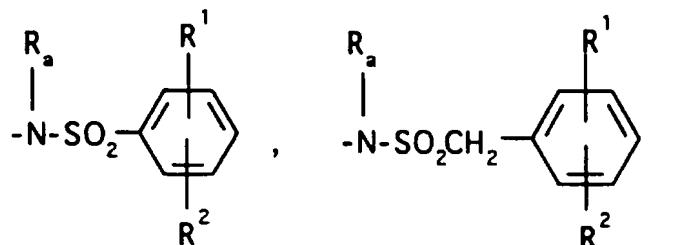
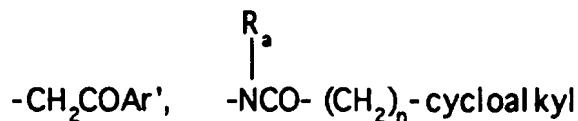
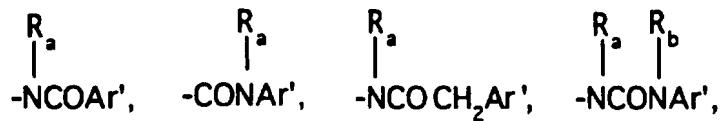
-152-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-153-



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

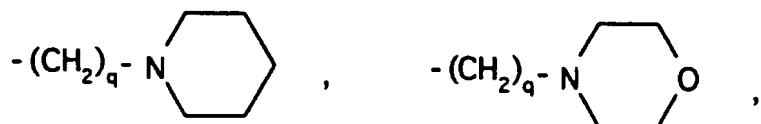
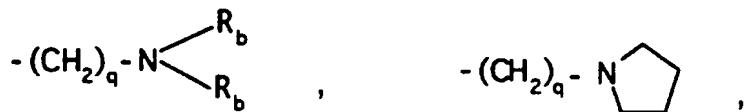
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl,

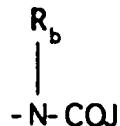
-154-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



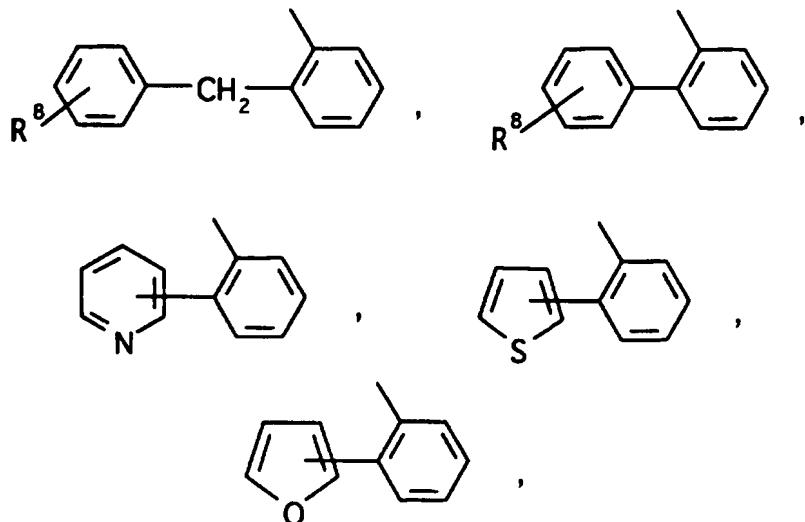
5       -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

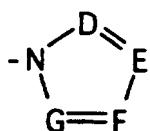


10       wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-155-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



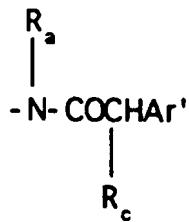
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-

10 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

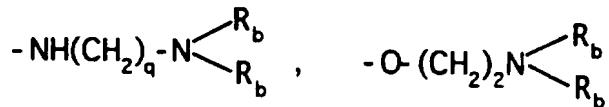
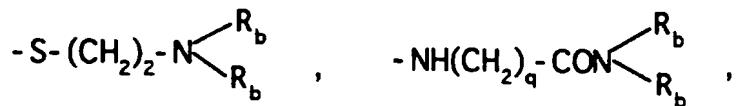
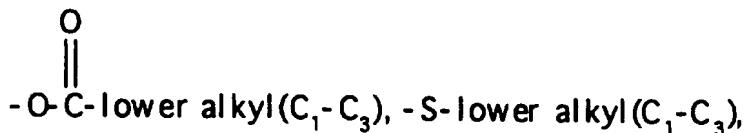
(c) a moiety of the formula:

-156-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



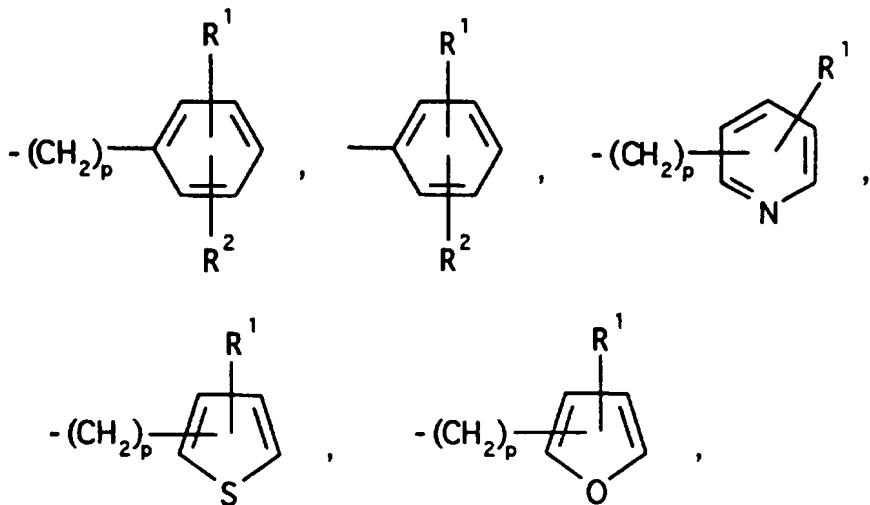
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



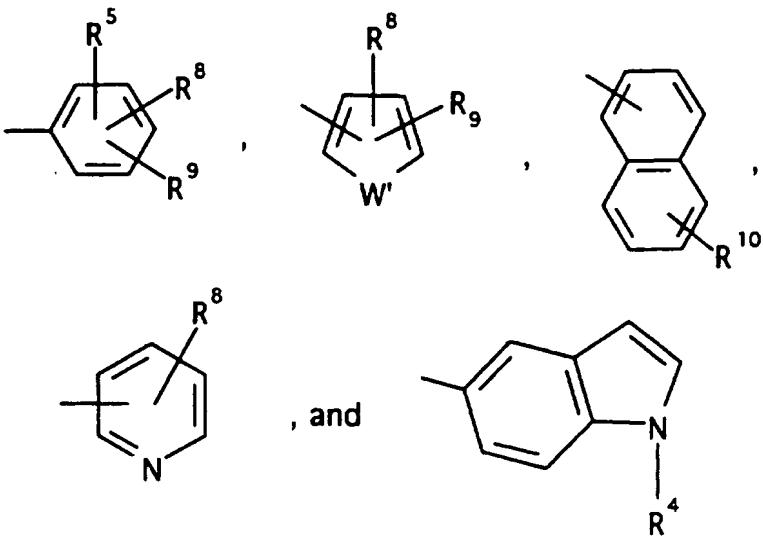
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> when R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-157-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

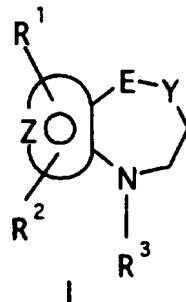
10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-158-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

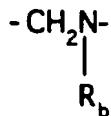
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

12. A compound selected from those of the formula:

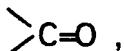


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

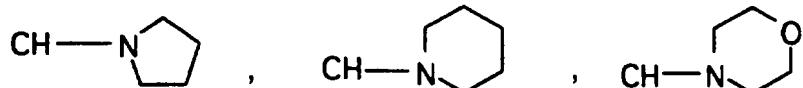


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-159-



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

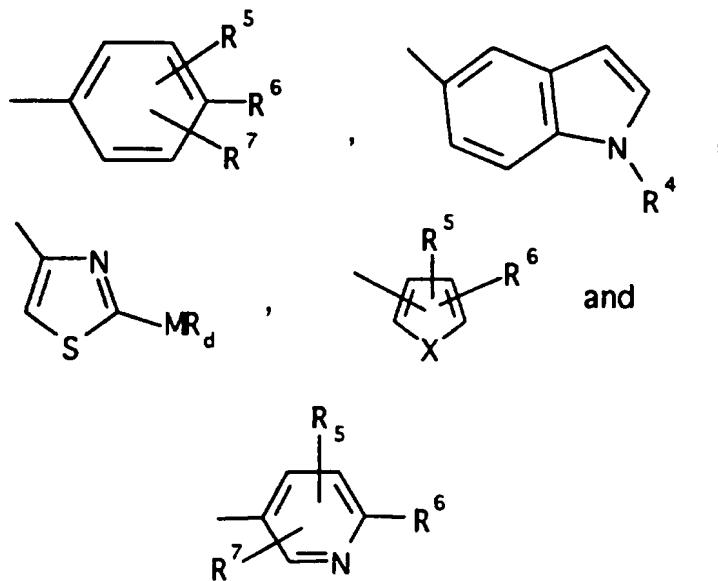
and the moiety:



5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered aromatic pyridazine ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkylamino;

10 R<sub>3</sub> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

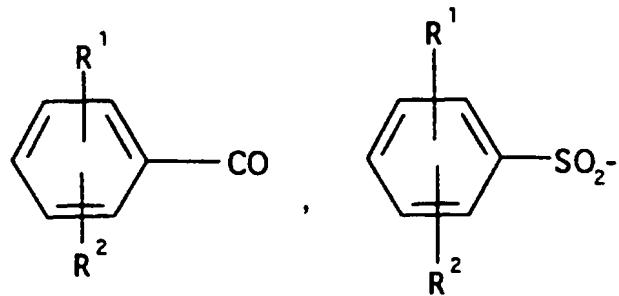


wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>;

R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-

15 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

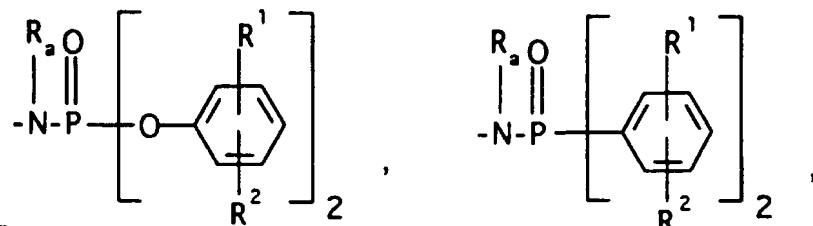
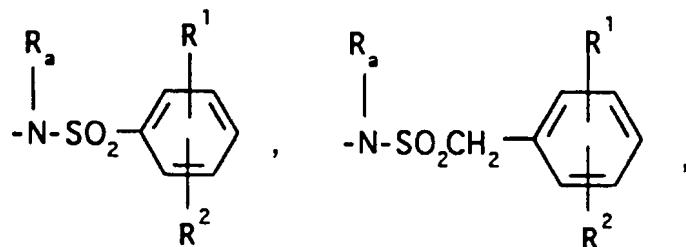
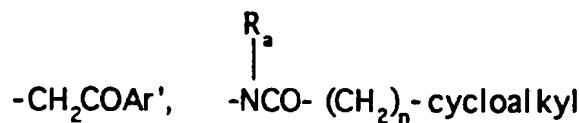
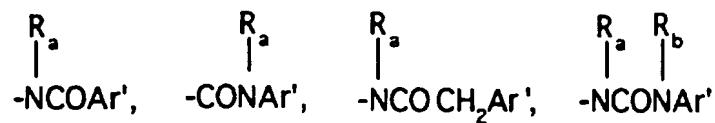
-160-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-161-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$  lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

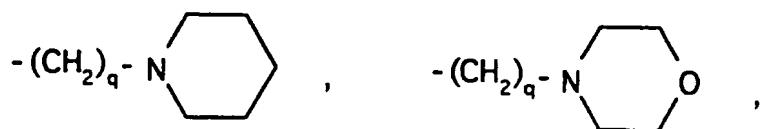
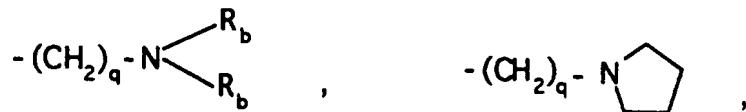
$-N-C-O$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$  lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl,

-162-

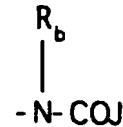
cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



- (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two,

5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

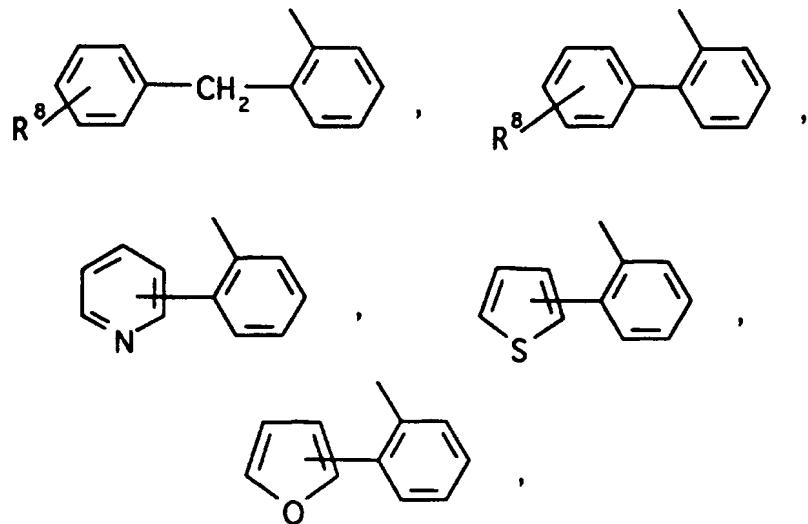
(b) a moiety of the formula:



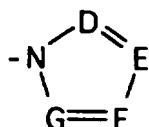
wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or

10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-163-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



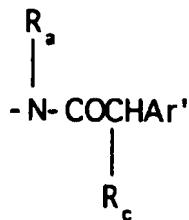
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-

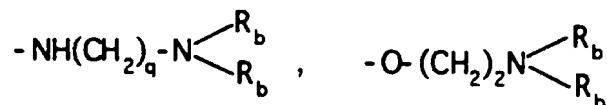
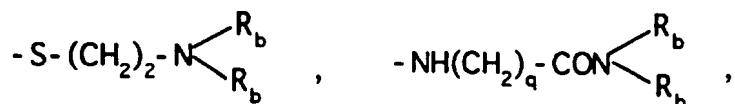
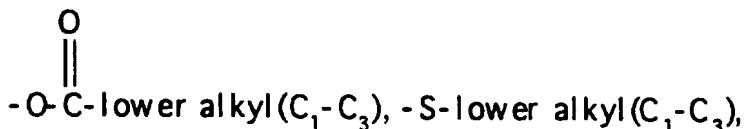
10 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

-164-



wherein  $\text{R}_c$  is selected from halogen, ( $\text{C}_1$ - $\text{C}_3$ ) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1$ - $\text{C}_3$ ), OH,



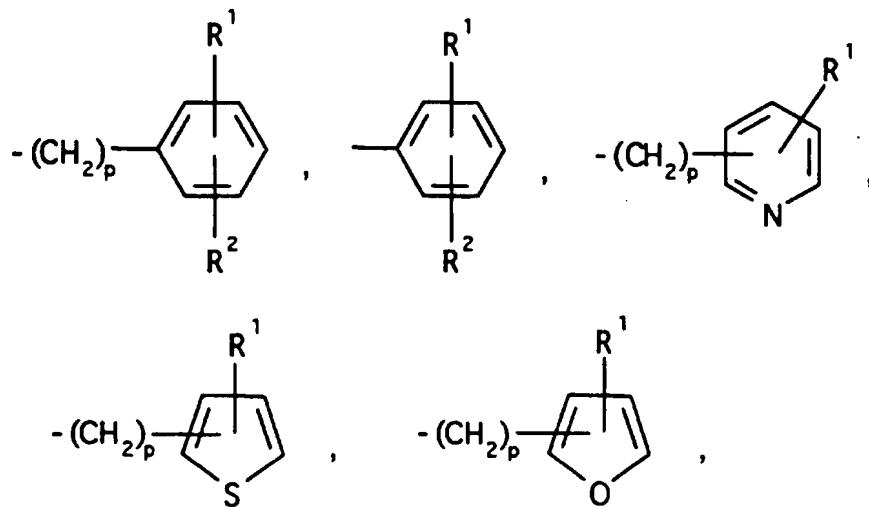
wherein  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



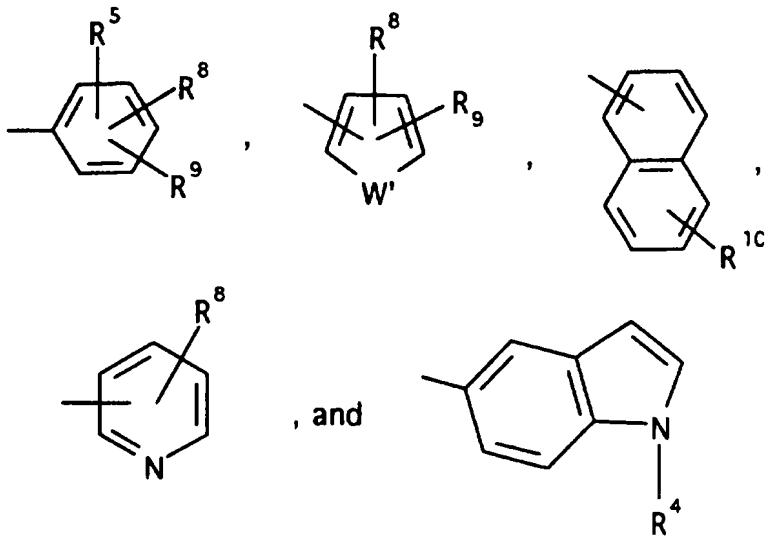
5 wherein  $\text{R}_d$  is lower alkyl( $\text{C}_3$ - $\text{C}_8$ ), lower alkenyl( $\text{C}_3$ - $\text{C}_8$ ), or  $-(\text{CH}_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl( $\text{C}_3$ - $\text{C}_6$ ) when  $\text{M}$  is O, S, NH,  $\text{NCH}_3$ , and the moiety  $-\text{M}-\text{R}_d$  wherein  $\text{R}_d$  is selected from the moieties:

-165-



wherein  $p$  is zero to four and  $M$  is a bond or  $M$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $NH$ ,  $NCH_3$ ; wherein  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R_a$  are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein  $Ar'$  is selected from moieties of the formula:



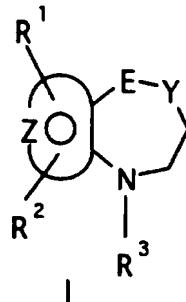
wherein  $W'$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $NH$ ,  $N$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $NHCO$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), and  $NSO_2$ lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ );

10  $R^7$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), halogen,  $O$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ) and  $CF_3$ ;  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are

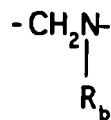
-166-

independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-  
5 CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;  
R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

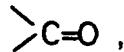
13. A compound selected from those of the  
10 formula:



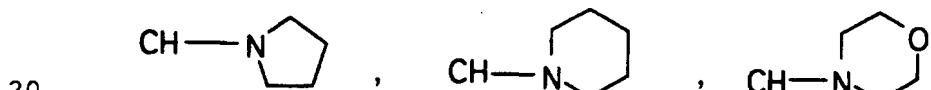
wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,



-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the  
15 moieties



-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-

-167-

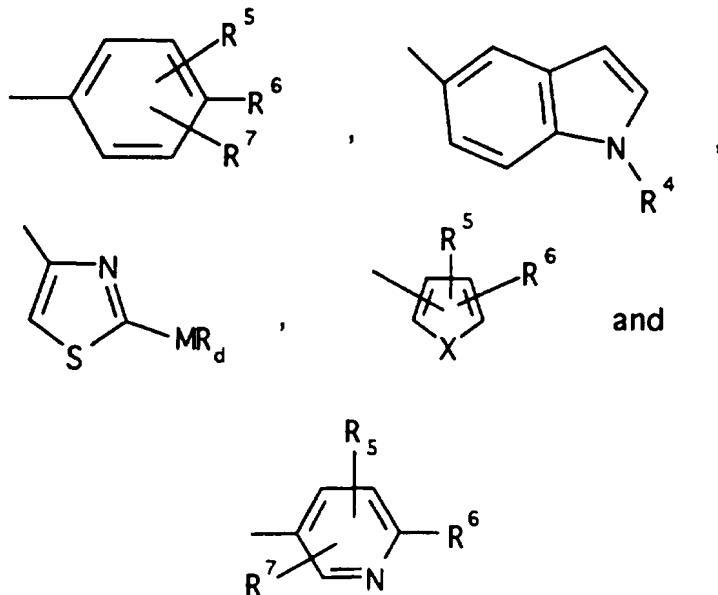
lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

5 and the moiety:

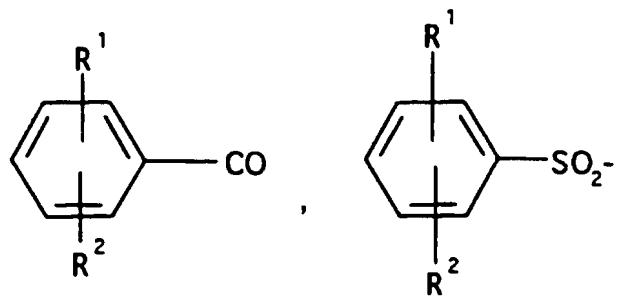


represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrrole ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, halogen, 10 amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkylamino; R<sub>3</sub> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>; 15 R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

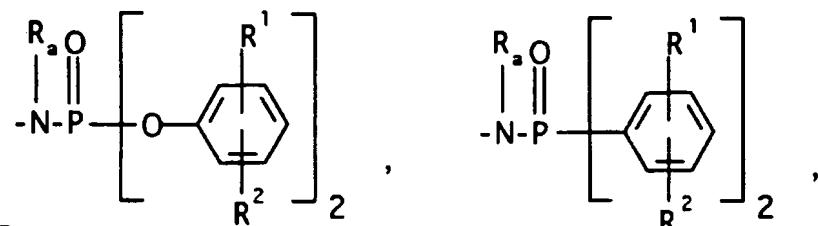
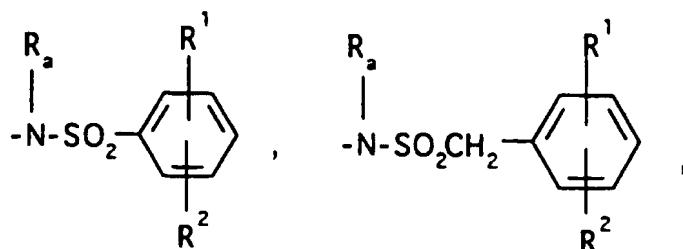
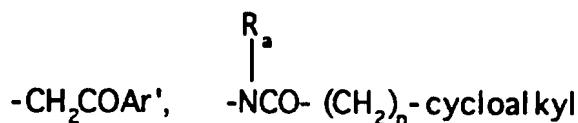
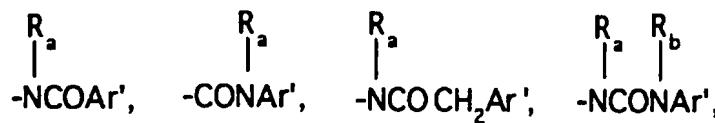
-168-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-169-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$ lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,

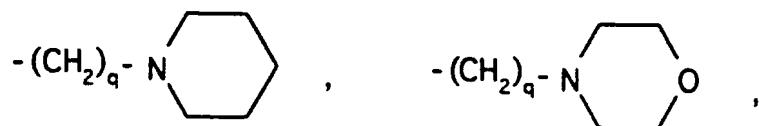
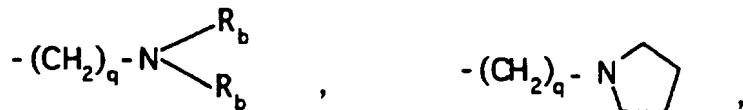
$-N-C(=O)-O$ -lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$ lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ )straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl,

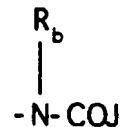
-170-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



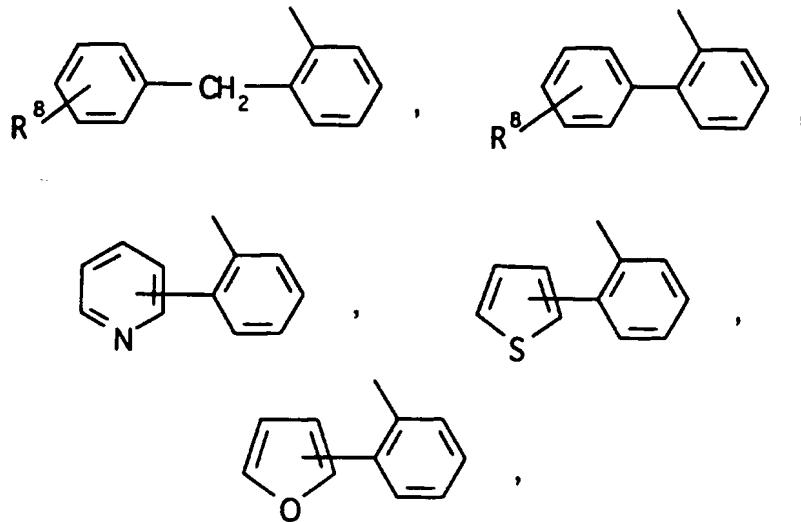
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

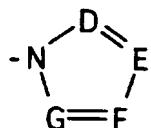


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-171-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein  $\text{K}'$  is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

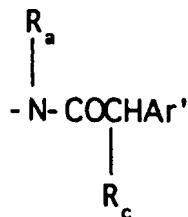


5

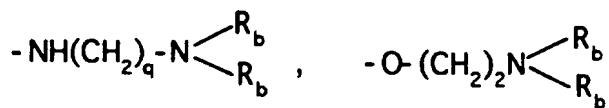
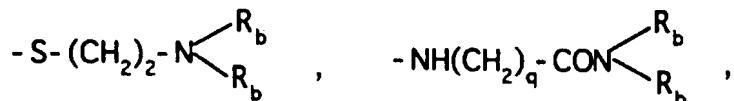
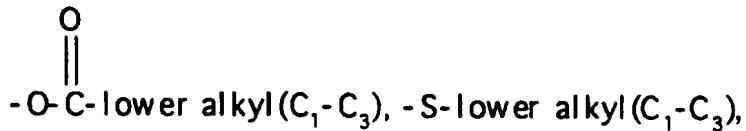
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

10 (c) a moiety of the formula:

-172-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, ( $C_1-C_3$ )  
lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), OH,



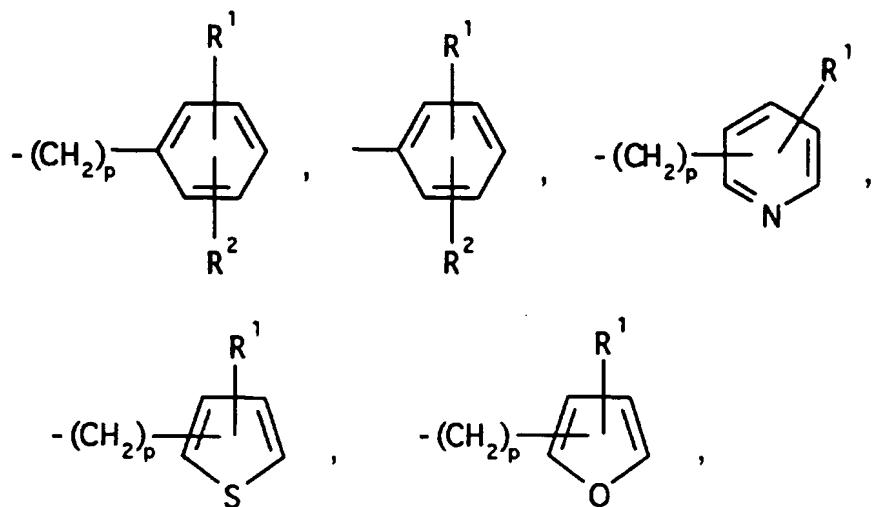
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



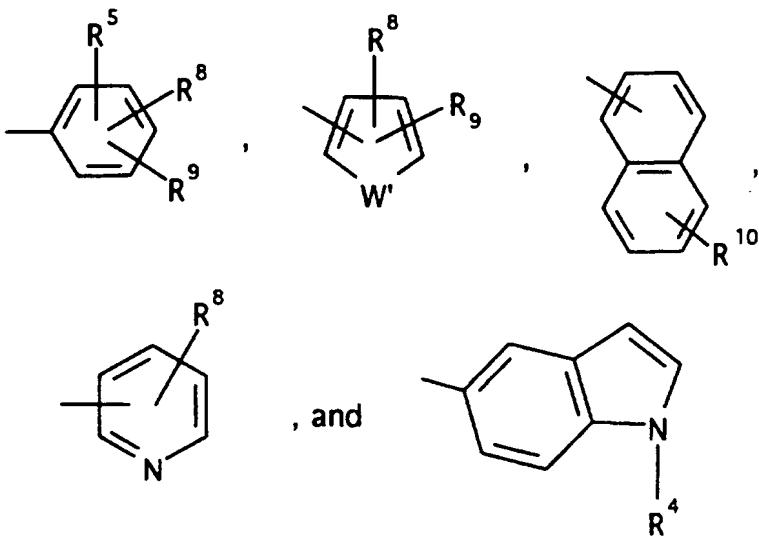
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ), lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ ),  
or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl( $C_3-C_6$ ) wherein  $M$  is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>,  
and the moiety  $-M-R_d$  wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the  
moieties:

-173-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

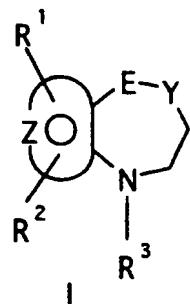
10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-174-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

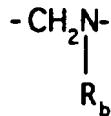
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

14. A compound selected from those of the formula:

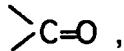


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

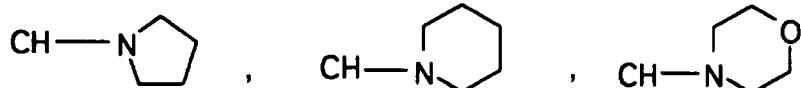


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-175-



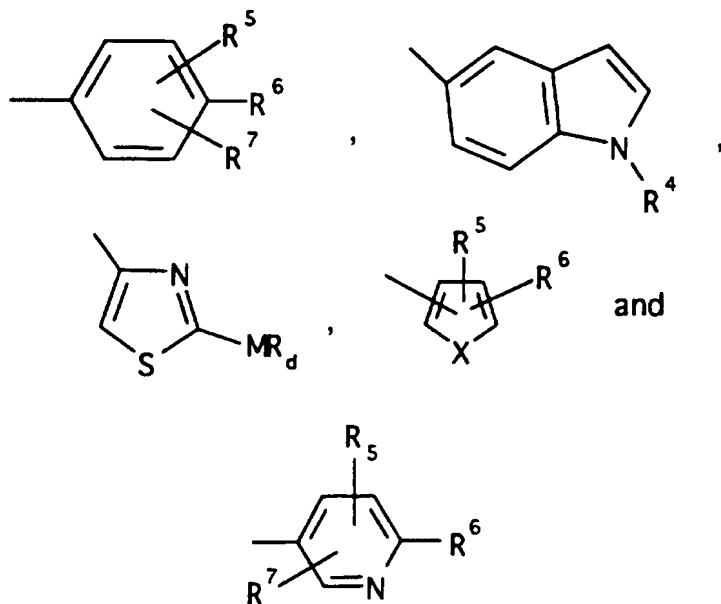
$S$ ,  $O$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-N$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $-NCO$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $m$  is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic furane ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkylamino;

10  $R_3$  is  $-COAr$ , wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

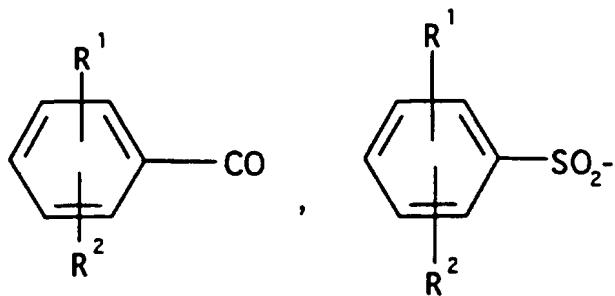


wherein  $X$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-NCH_3$  and  $-NCOCH_3$ ;

$R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CO-$

15 lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),

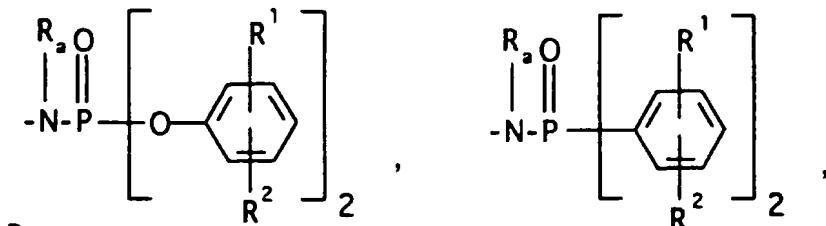
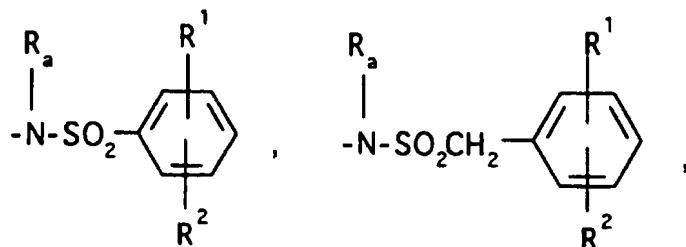
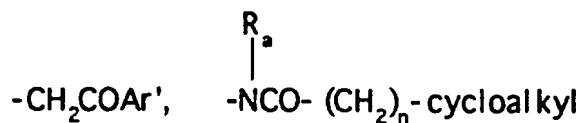
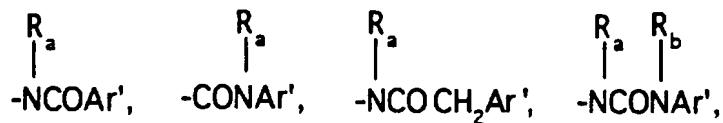
-176-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-177-



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

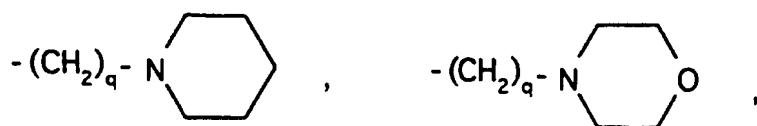
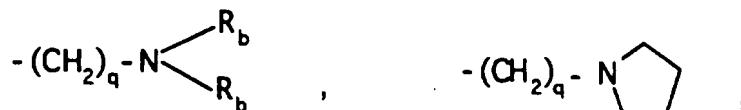
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl,

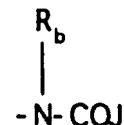
-178-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



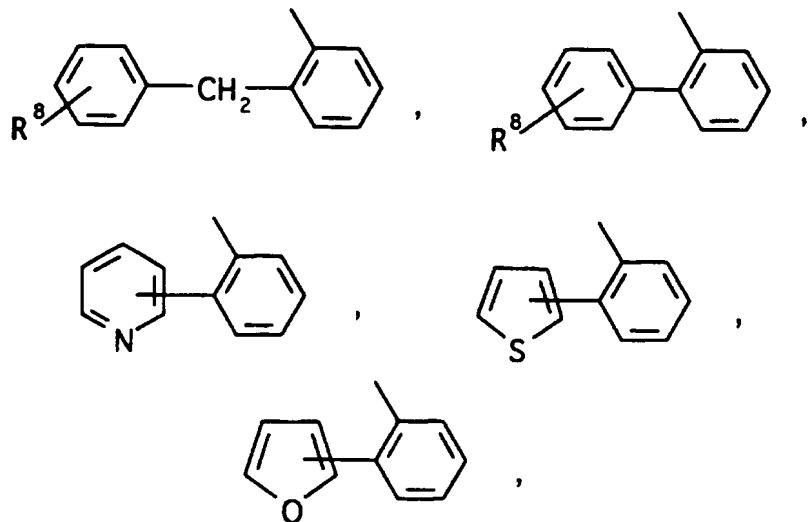
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two,  
 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen,  
 -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

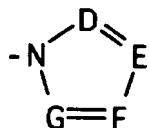


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or  
 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched,  
 O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower  
 alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,  
 tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-179-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein  $\text{K}'$  is  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



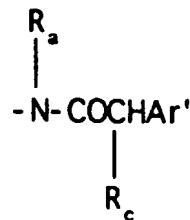
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy,  $-\text{CO-}$ lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ ),  $\text{CHO}$ ,  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-\text{CO}_2\text{-}$

10 lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ ), and  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

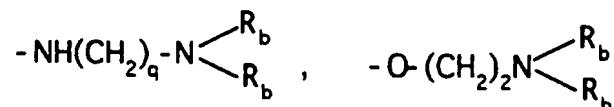
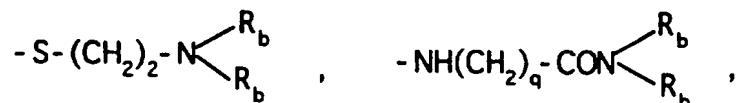
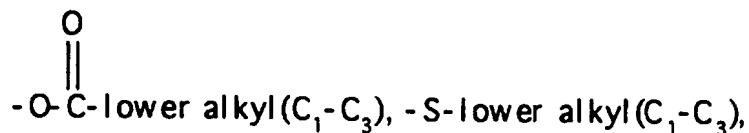
(c) a moiety of the formula:

-180-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



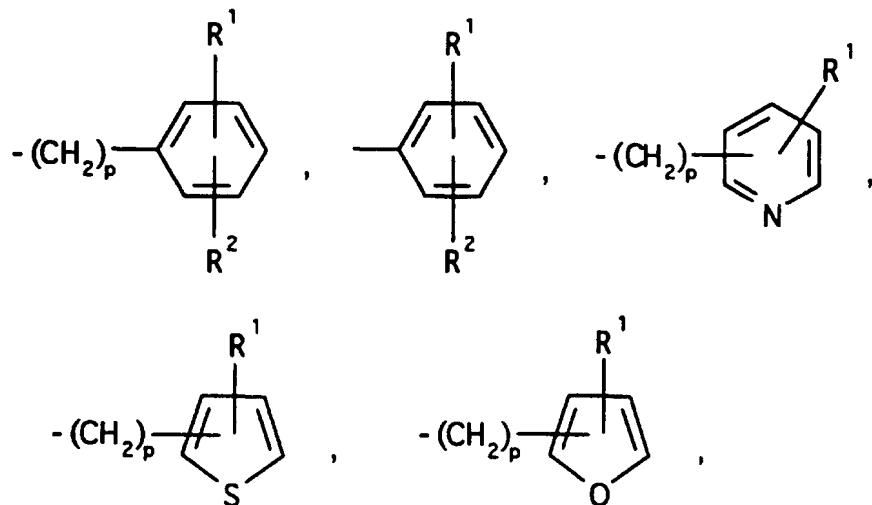
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



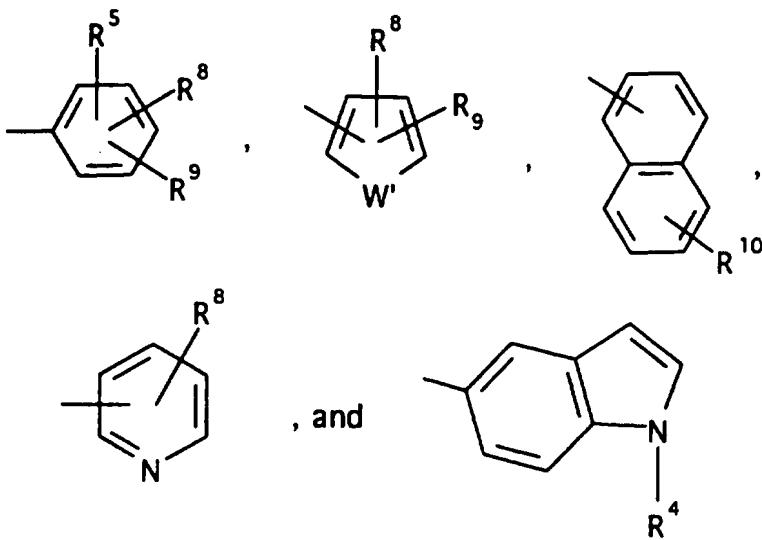
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-181-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);

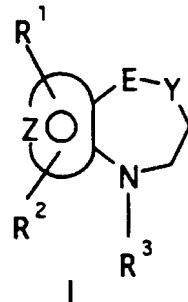
10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-182-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

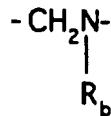
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

15. A compound selected from those of the formula:

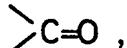


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

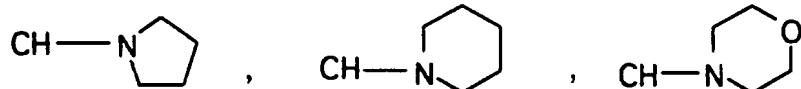


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-183-



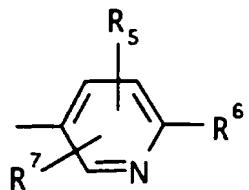
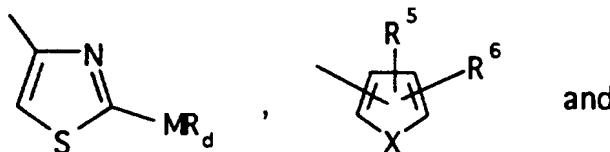
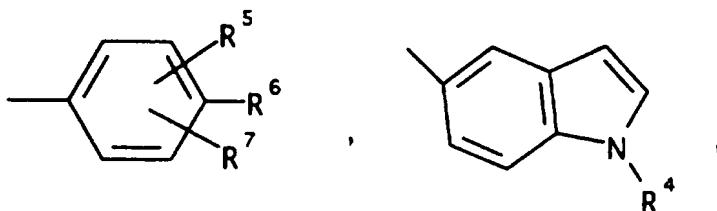
$S$ ,  $O$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-N$ -lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $-NCO$ -lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $m$  is an integer of 2 to 6;  
 and the moiety:



5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiophene ring, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkylamino;

10  $R_3$  is  $-COAr$ , wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

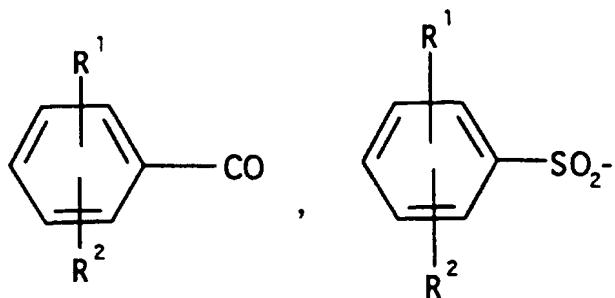


wherein  $X$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-NCH_3$  and  $-NCOCH_3$ ;

$R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CO-$

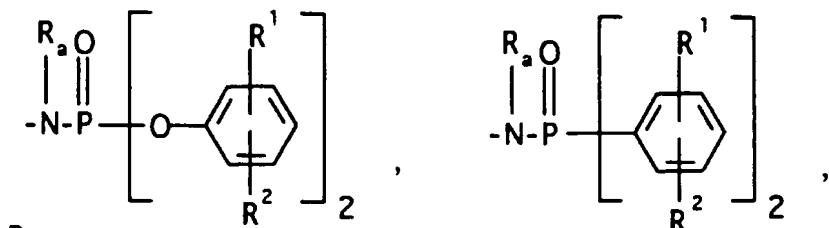
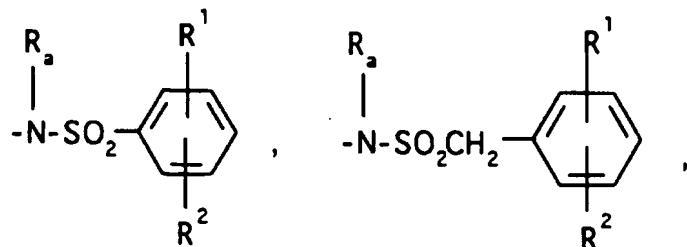
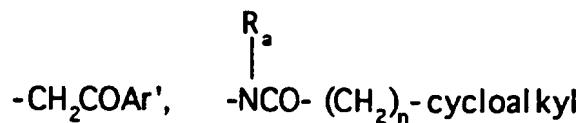
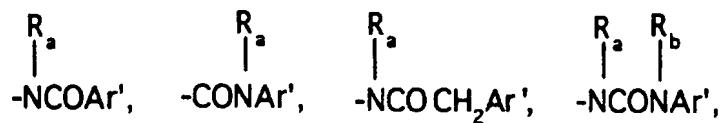
15 lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ),

-184-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

-185-



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,  
 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,

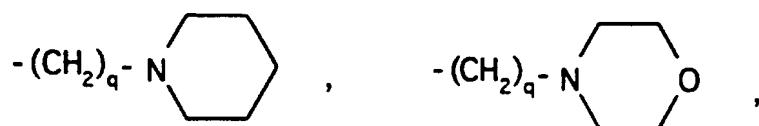
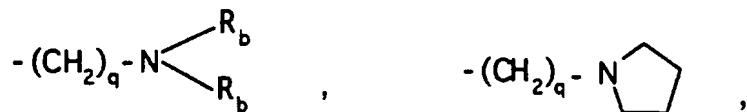
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,  
 $\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \end{array}$  straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl,

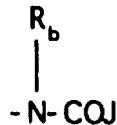
-186-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



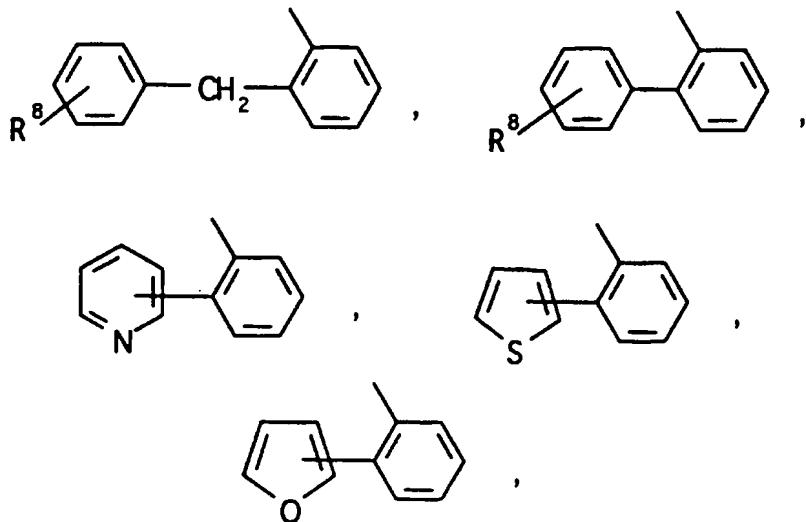
- (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

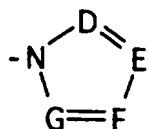


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-187-



or  $-\text{CH}_2-\text{K}'$  wherein  $\text{K}'$  is  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



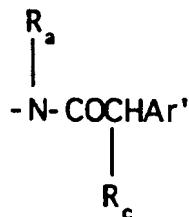
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy,  $-\text{CO-lower alkyl}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$ ,  $\text{CHO}$ ,  $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-\text{CO}_2-$

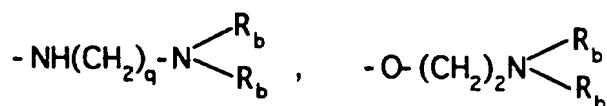
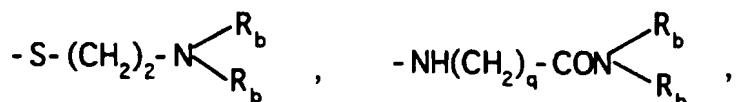
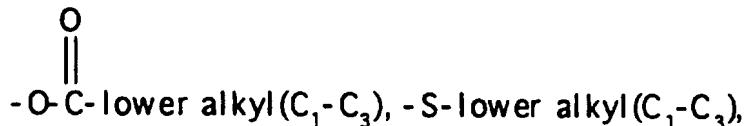
10 lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3$ ), and  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

-188-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ), OH,



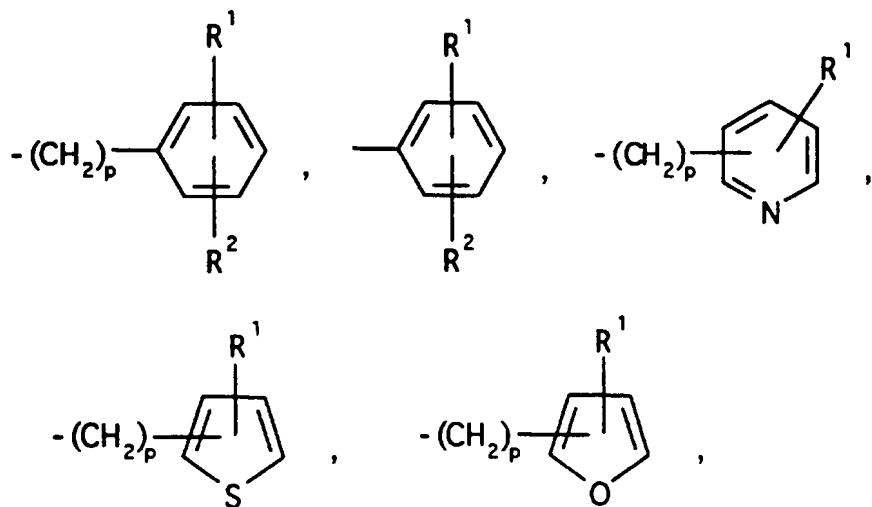
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



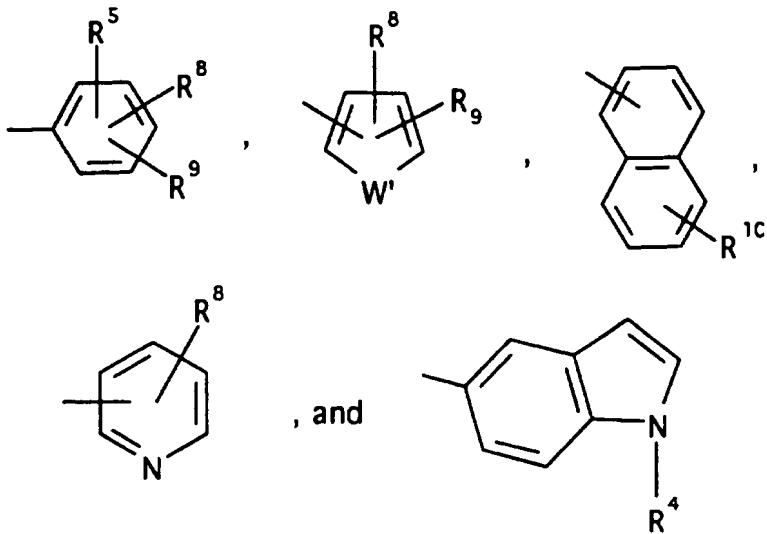
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ), lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ ), or  $-(CH_2)_p$ -cycloalkyl( $C_3-C_6$ ) when  $M$  is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety  $-M-R_d$  wherein  $R_d$  is selected from the moieties:

-189-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



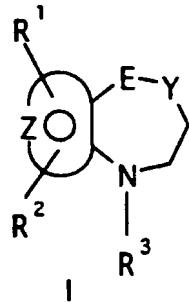
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  
 10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-190-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

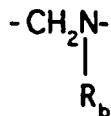
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

16. A compound selected from those of the formula:

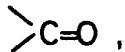


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

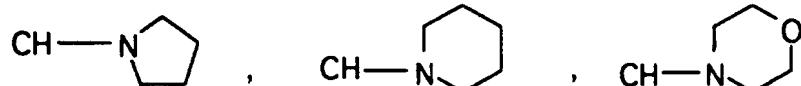


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-191-



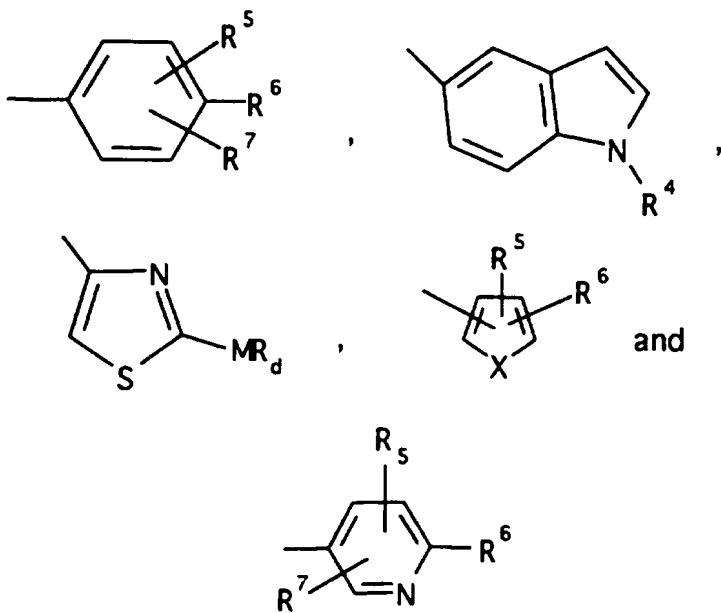
$S$ ,  $O$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-N$ -lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $-NCO$ -lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $m$  is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

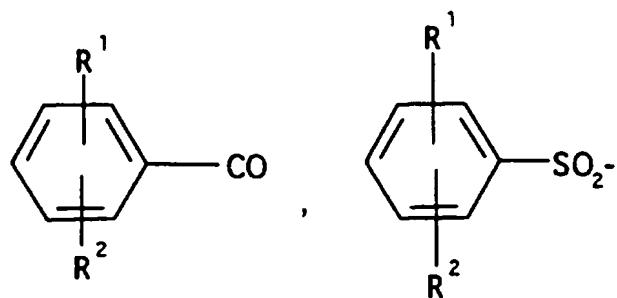
represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic pyrazole ring, optionally substituted by a substituent selected from ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkylamino;

10  $R_3$  is  $-COAr$ , wherein  $Ar$  is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



wherein  $X$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-NCH_3$  and  $-NCOCH_3$ ;  
15  $R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CO$ -lower alkyl ( $C_1-C_3$ ),

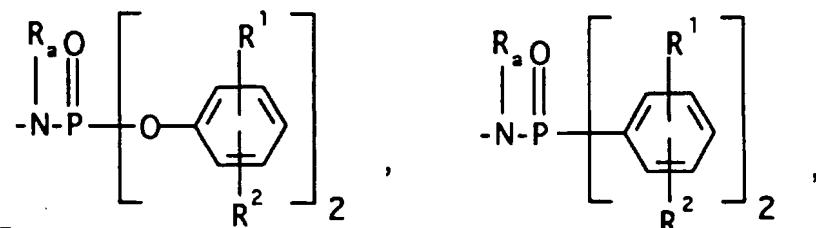
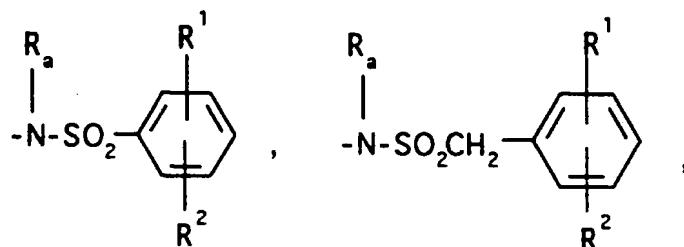
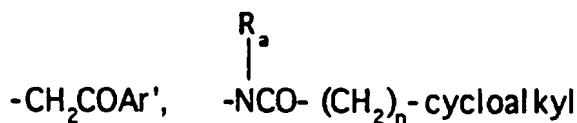
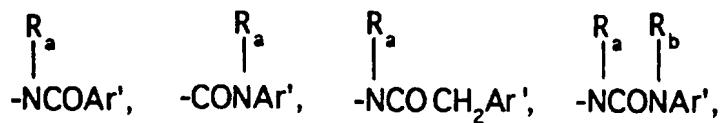
-192-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-193-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O \end{array}$  lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

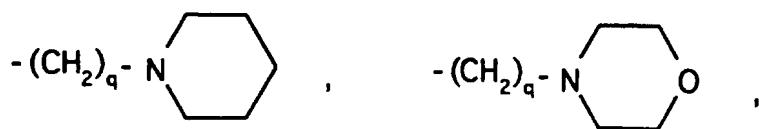
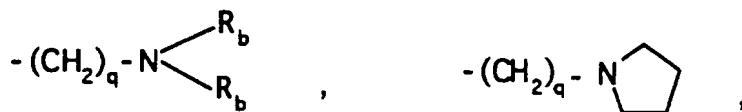
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O \end{array}$  lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O \end{array}$  lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,  
 $-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl,

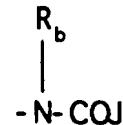
-194-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



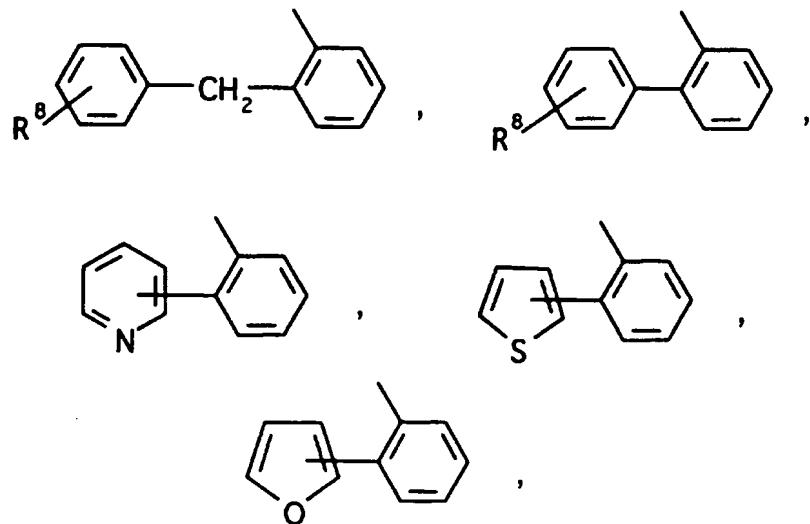
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

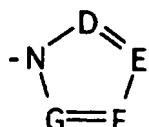


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-195-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



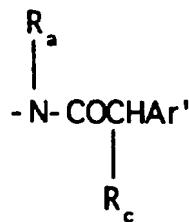
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-

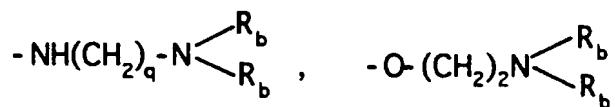
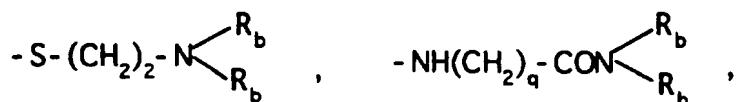
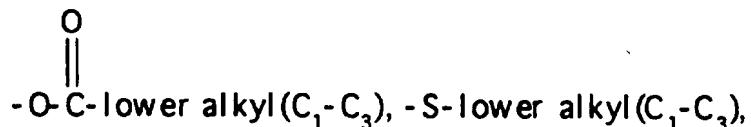
10 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

-196-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



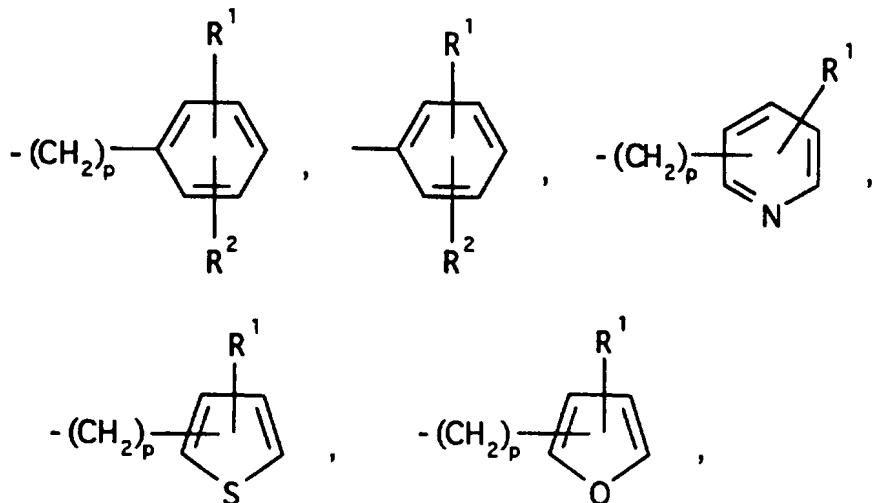
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



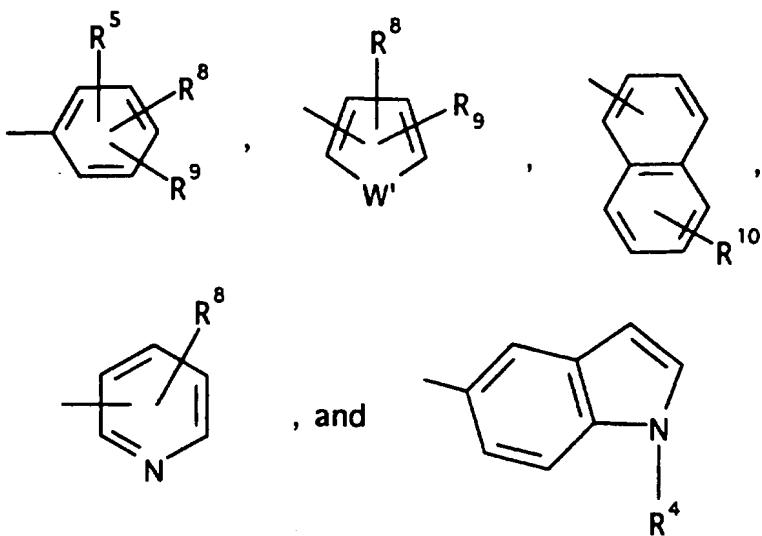
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-197-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

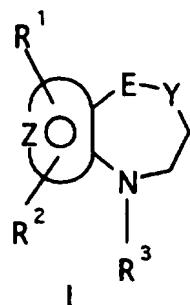
10 halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-198-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

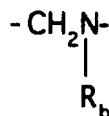
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

17. A compound selected from those of the formula:

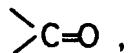


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

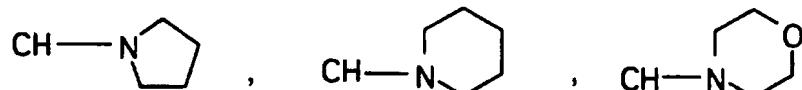


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-199-



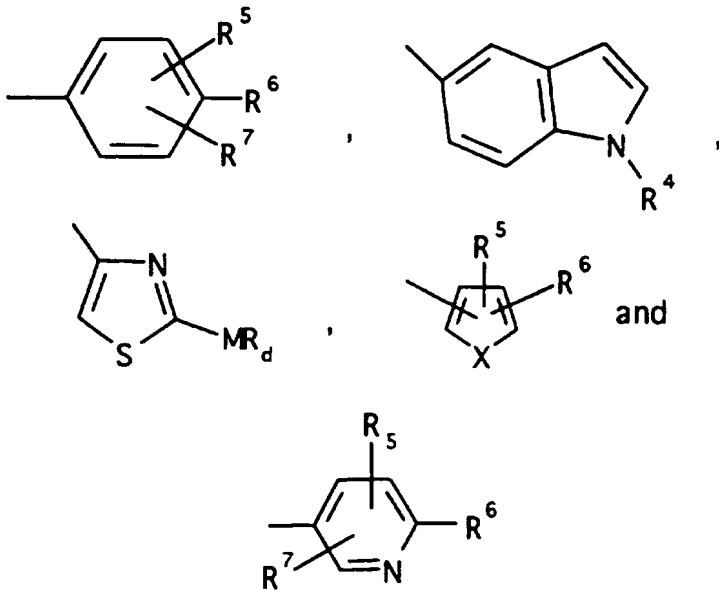
$S$ ,  $O$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-N$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $-NCO$ -lower alkyl( $C_1-C_6$ ),  $m$  is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic oxazole ring, optionally substituted by a substituent selected from ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkyl, halogen, amino, ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkoxy or ( $C_1-C_3$ ) lower alkylamino;

10  $R_3$  is  $-COAr$ , wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

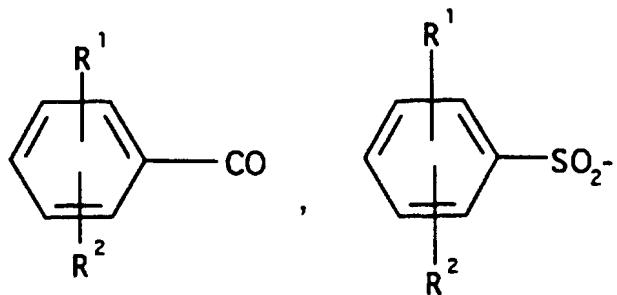


wherein  $X$  is selected from  $O$ ,  $S$ ,  $-NH$ ,  $-NCH_3$  and  $-NCOCH_3$ ;

$R^4$  is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),  $-CO$ -

15 lower alkyl( $C_1-C_3$ ),

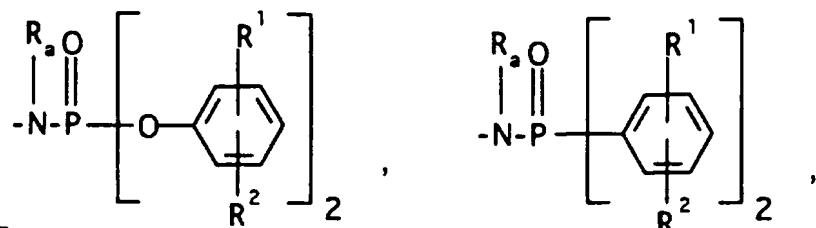
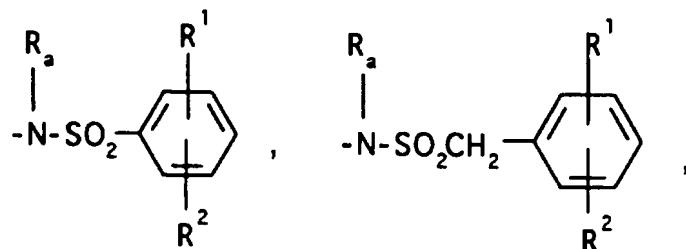
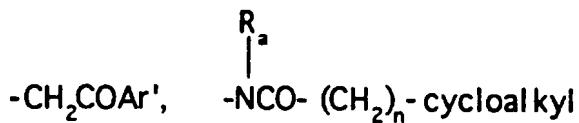
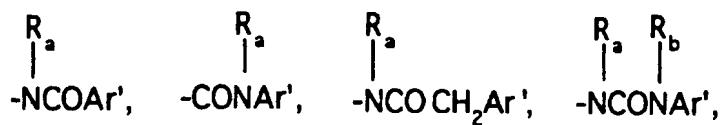
-200-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-201-



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

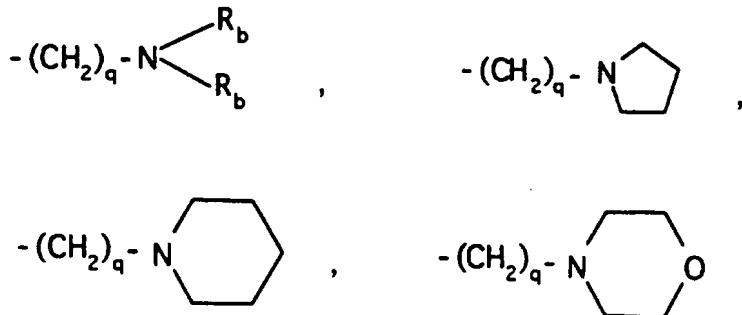
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \quad O \\ | \quad || \\ -N-C-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl,

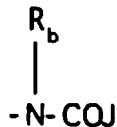
-202-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



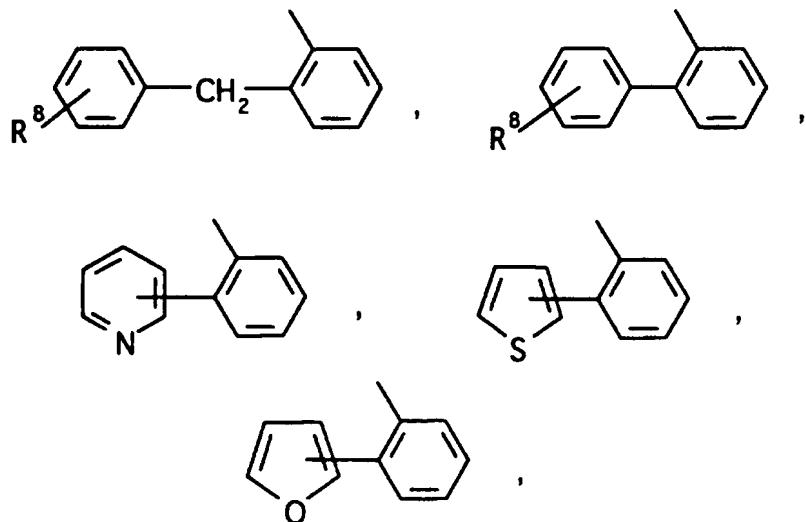
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

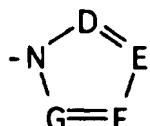


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-203-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:

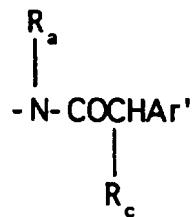


5

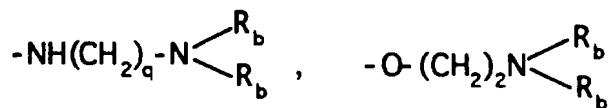
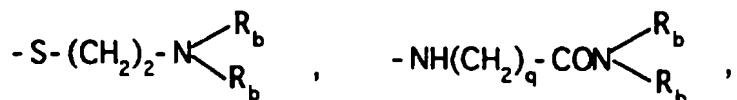
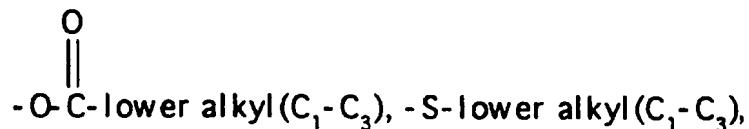
wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

10 (c) a moiety of the formula:

-204-

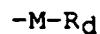


wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



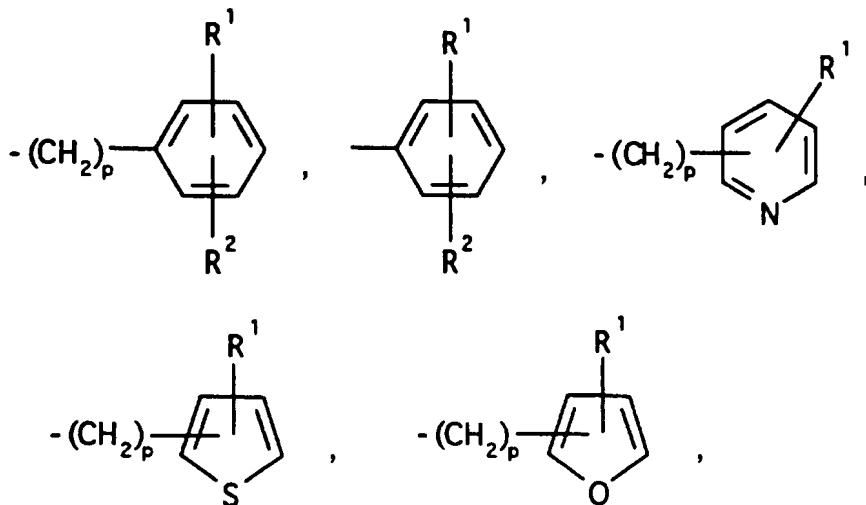
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



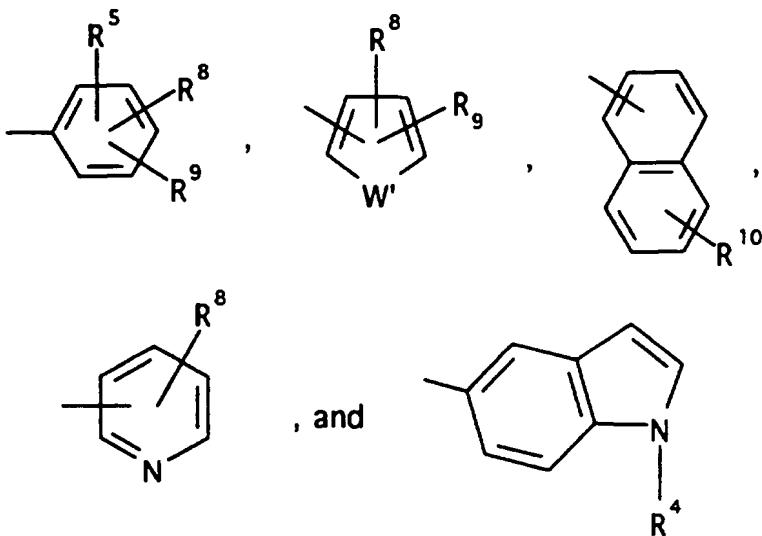
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) where M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-205-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



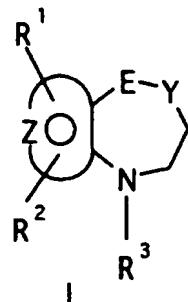
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  
 10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-206-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

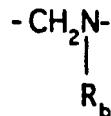
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

18. A compound selected from those of the formula:

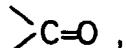


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

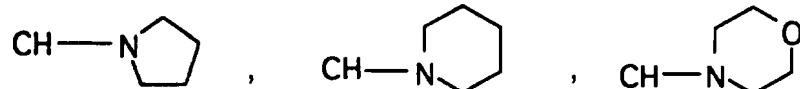


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-207-



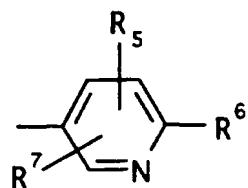
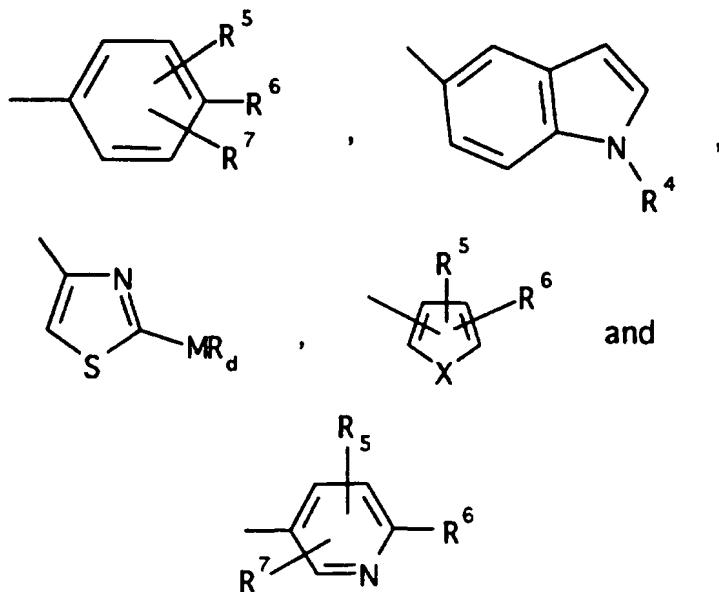
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

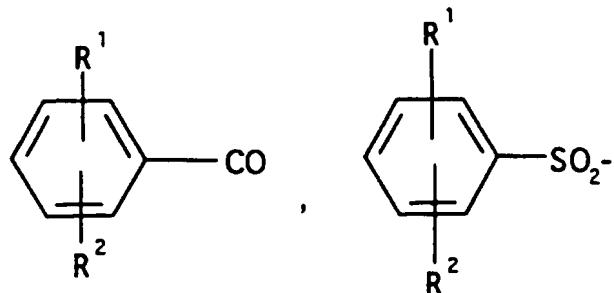
represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic isoxazole ring, optionally substituted by a substituent selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkylamino;

10 R<sub>3</sub> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>;  
R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-  
15 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

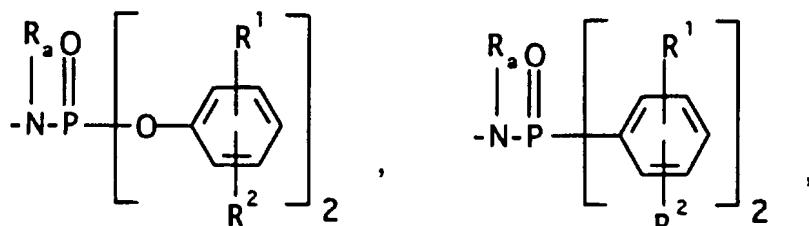
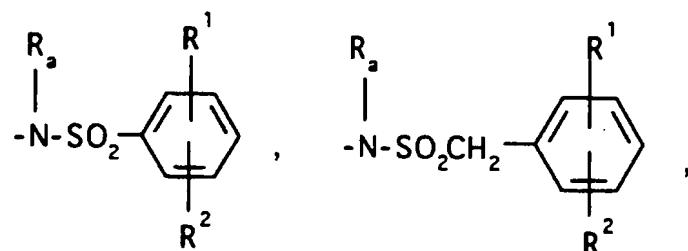
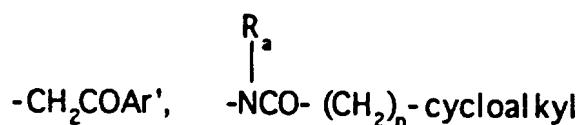
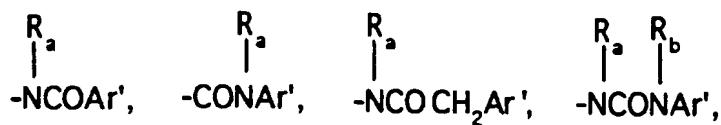
-208-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-209-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$ lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O- \end{array}$ lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

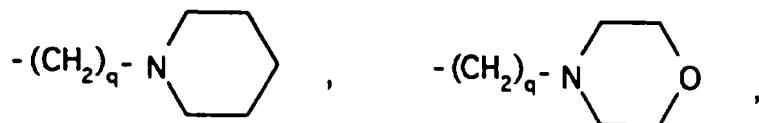
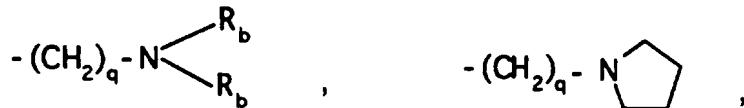
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)- \end{array}$ lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl ( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl,

-210-

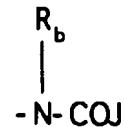
cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two,

5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

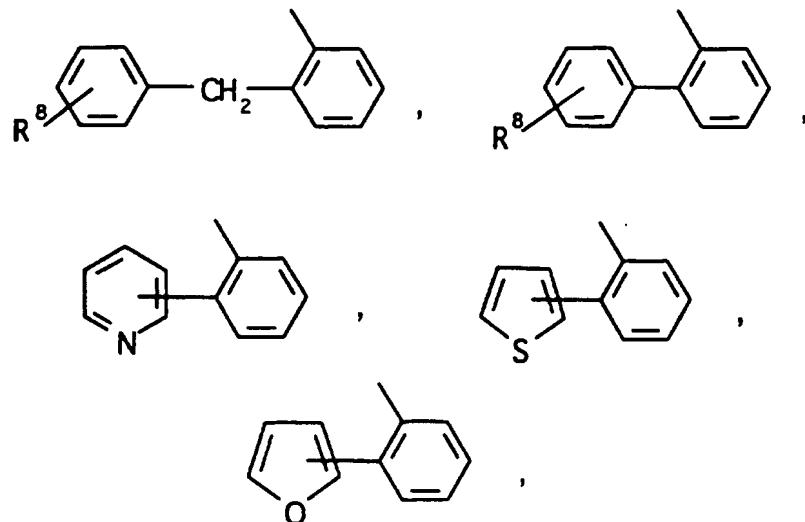
(b) a moiety of the formula:



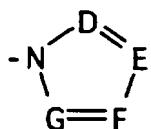
wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or

10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-211-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein  $\text{K}'$  is  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ -lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



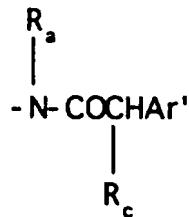
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen,  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$  lower alkyl, hydroxy,  $-\text{CO-}$ lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ ),  $\text{CHO}$ ,  $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$  lower alkoxy,  $-\text{CO}_2\text{-}$

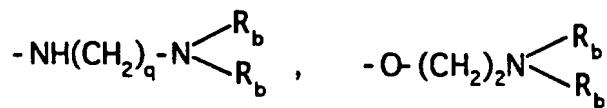
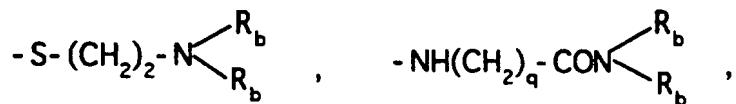
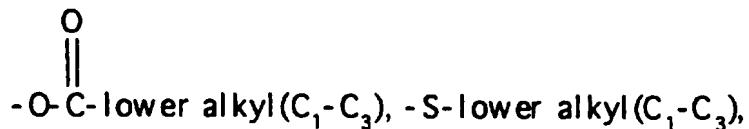
10 lower alkyl( $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3$ ), and  $\text{R}_a$  and  $\text{R}_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(c) a moiety of the formula:

-212-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



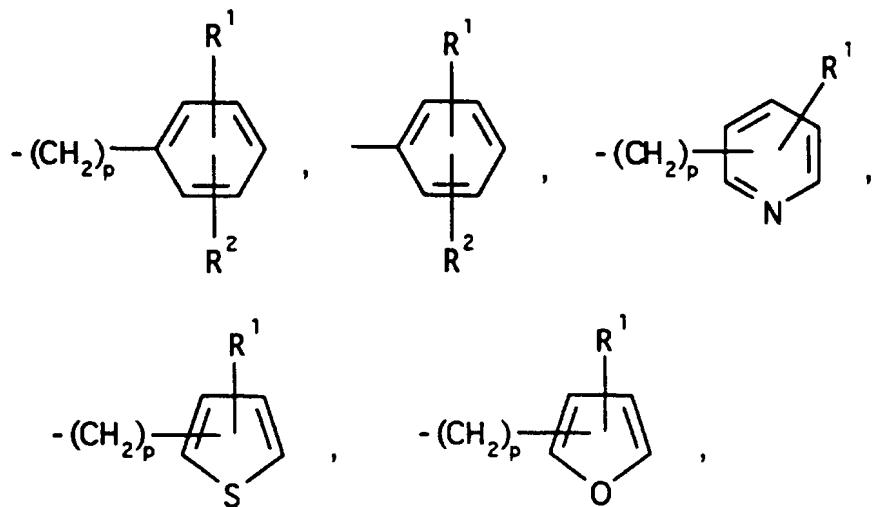
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



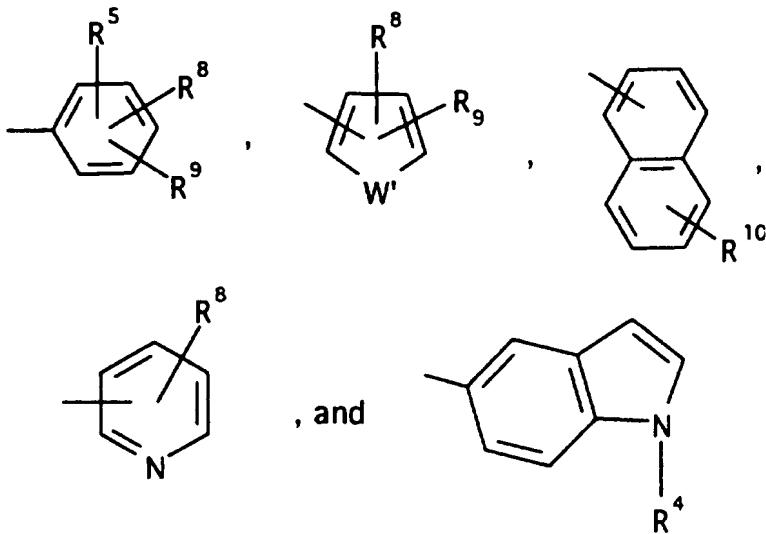
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-213-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



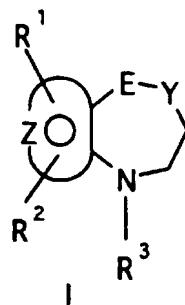
wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  
 10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-214-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;

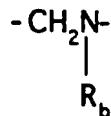
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

19. A compound selected from those of the formula:

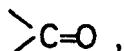


10

wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,

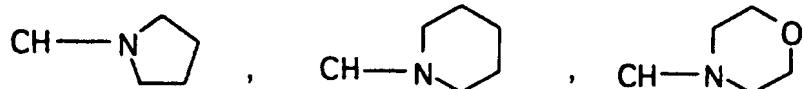


-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub> and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



15

-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>,



20 -CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

-215-



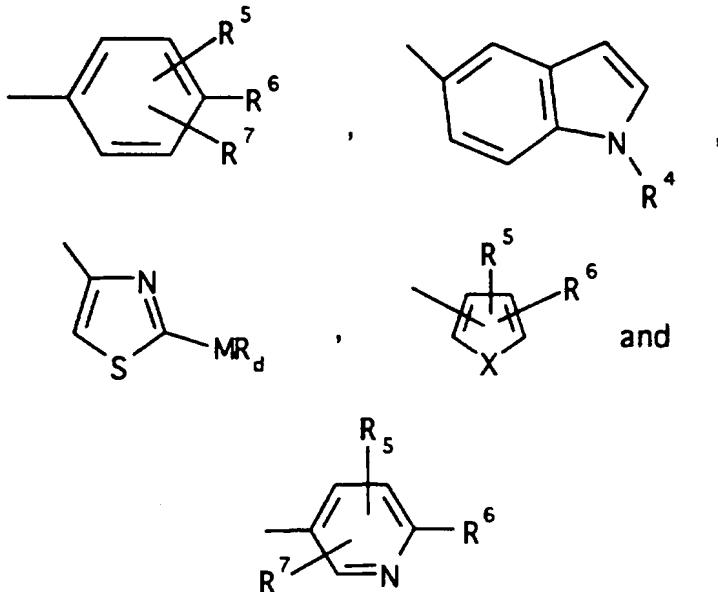
S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;  
and the moiety:



5

represents: (1) an unsaturated 5-membered aromatic thiazole ring, optionally substituted by a substituent selected from (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkylamino;

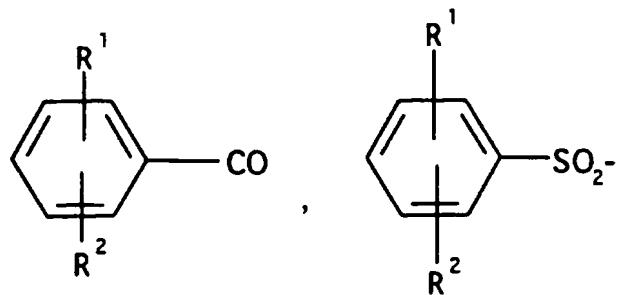
10 R<sub>3</sub> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:



wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>;  
R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-

15 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

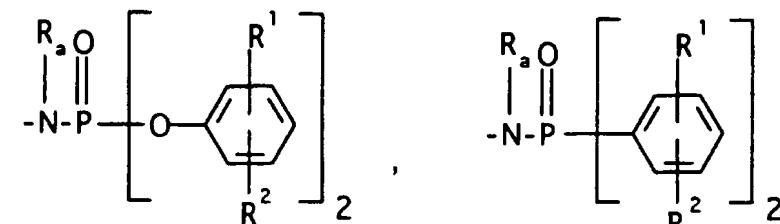
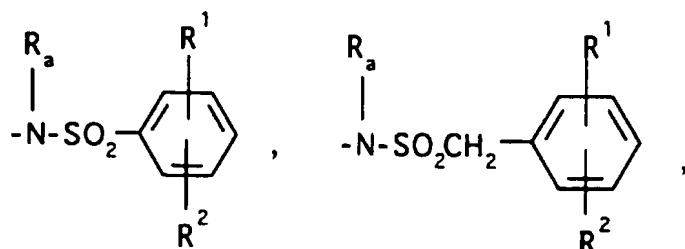
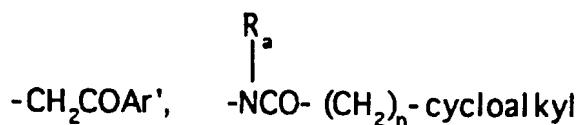
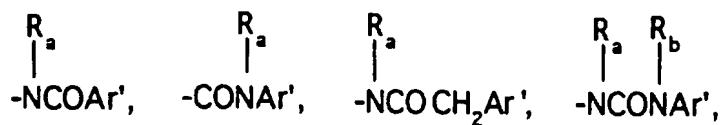
-216-



-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

5

-217-



$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-O-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

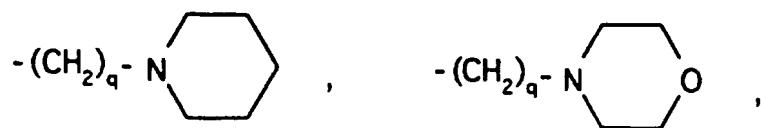
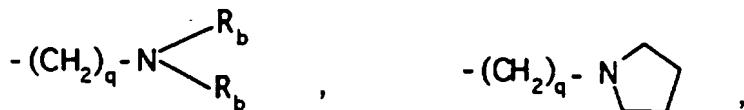
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -N-C(=O)-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ -NSO_2-\text{lower alkenyl (C}_3\text{-C}_8\text{)} \text{ straight or branched,} \end{array}$

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as (C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) cycloalkyl,

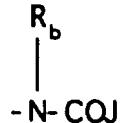
-218-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



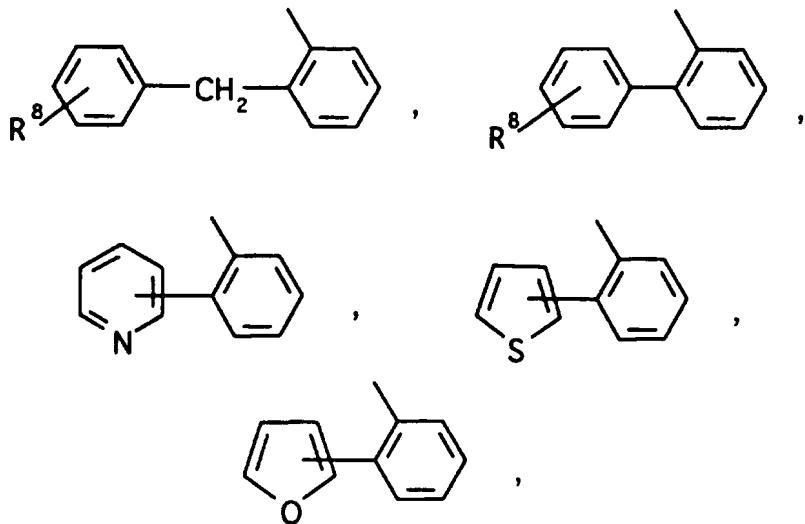
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two, 5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

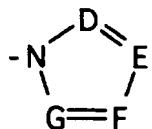


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or 10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-219-



or  $-\text{CH}_2\text{-K}'$  wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



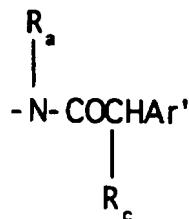
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-

10 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

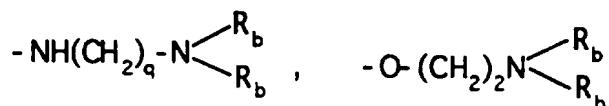
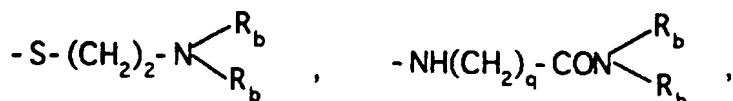
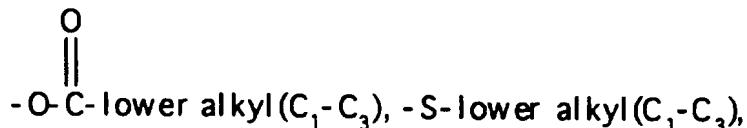
(c) a moiety of the formula:

-220-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



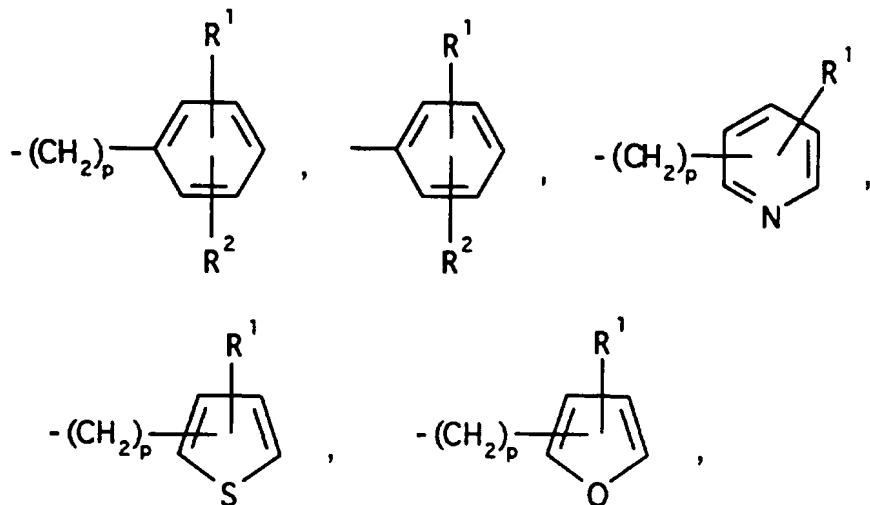
wherein  $R_a$  and  $R_b$  are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



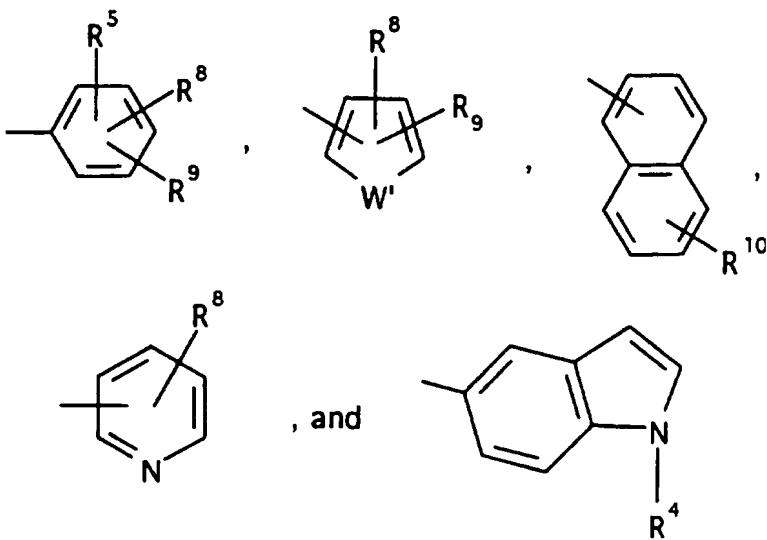
5 wherein  $R_d$  is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-221-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:



wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>);  
 10 R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-222-

-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>, -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;  
5 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-3,4-dichlorobenzamide.

10 21. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.

15 22. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.

23. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-2-furanecarboxamide.

20 24. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-4-tert-butylbenzamide.

25 25. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzamide.

26. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-4-(n-butyl)benzamide.

30 27. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-3-methyl-2-thiophenecarboxamide.

28. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)- carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dimethylbenzamide.

35 29. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-

-223-

carbonyl]phenyl]-2,5-dichlorobenzamide.

30. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
carbonyl]phenyl]-2,3-dimethylbenzamide.

5 31. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dimethylbenzamide.

32. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
10 carbonyl]phenyl]benzeneacetamide.

33. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzeneacetamide.

15 34. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide.

35. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-  
carbonyl]phenyl]-3-cyclohexenecarboxamide.

20 36. The compound according to Claim 1, 2,4-  
dichloro-N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-  
thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]benzamide.

37. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-  
25 yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

38. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-  
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2,6-dichlorobenzamide.

39. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
30 [(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-  
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.

40. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-  
yl)carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.

35 41. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-  
[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-

-224-

yl) carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

42. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

5 43. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(2-chloro-5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]-3-methoxyphenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

10 44. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]phenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

45. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]phenyl]-2,4-dichlorobenzamide.

15 46. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]phenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

20 47. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

48. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-8-oxo-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl) carbonyl]-2-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

25 49. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-yl)-carbonyl]phenyl]-2-chlorobenzeneacetamide.

50. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]-4-yl) carbonyl]-phenyl]-4-oxo-4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]furan-3-carboxamide

30 51. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-yl) carbonyl]phenyl]-2-thiophenecarboxamide.

52. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(3,4-dihydropyrido[2,3-b][1,4]thiazepin-1(2H)-yl) carbonyl]phenyl]-2-methylbenzamide.

-225-

53. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl]-carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-2-chloro-4-fluorobenzamide.

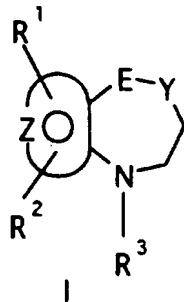
54. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6-dihydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

55. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[4-[(5,6-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-3-chlorophenyl]-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

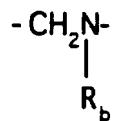
10 56. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-[5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl]-5-fluoro-2-methylbenzamide.

15 57. The compound according to Claim 1 N-[5-[(5,6,7,8-tetrahydro-4H-thieno[3,2-b]azepin-4-yl)carbonyl]-2-pyridinyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide.

58. A process to prepare compounds of the general Formula I:

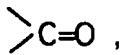


wherein E-Y is selected from the moieties -CH=CH-,



20

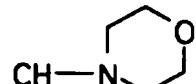
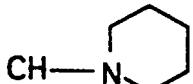
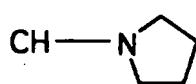
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- and when Y is -CH<sub>2</sub>-, E is selected from the moieties:



-CHOH, -CHO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CH-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),

25 -CHNH<sub>2</sub>, -CHN-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -C[N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-

-226-

C<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

-CHOCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>

-NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-N[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-

5 C<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>; -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -CHNH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-O-

lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>),



S, O, -NH, -N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), -NCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>), m is an integer of 2 to 6;

10 and the moiety:



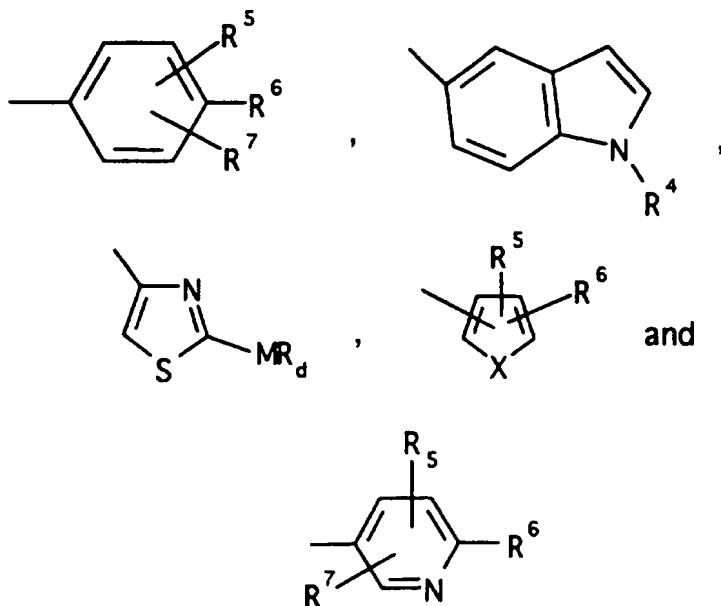
represents: (1) an unsaturated 6-membered heterocyclic aromatic ring containing two nitrogen atoms, optionally substituted by one or two substituents selected from

15 (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, halogen, amino, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkylamino; (2) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) hetero-cyclic ring having one heteroatom selected from O, N or S; (3) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having two adjacent

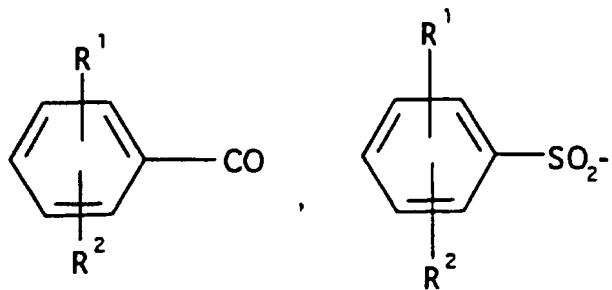
20 nitrogen atoms; (4) a 5-membered aromatic (unsaturated) heterocyclic ring having one nitrogen atom together with either one oxygen or one sulfur atom; wherein the 5 or 6-membered heterocyclic rings are optionally substituted by (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, halogen, or (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy;

25 R<sup>3</sup> is -COAr, wherein Ar is a moiety selected from the group consisting of:

-227-



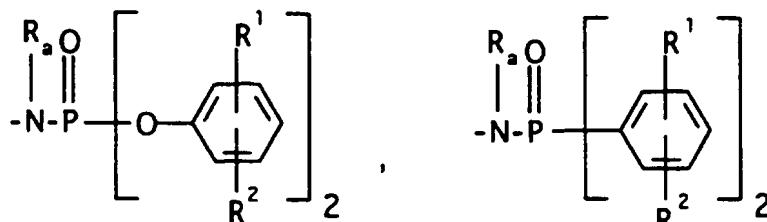
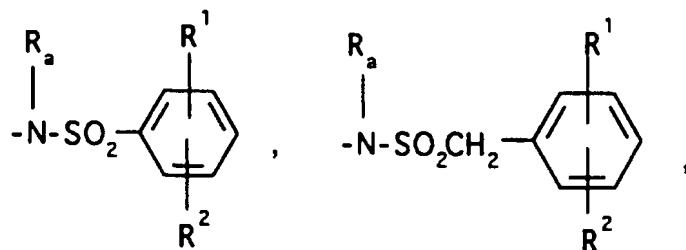
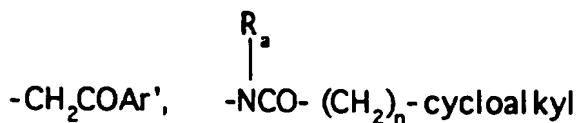
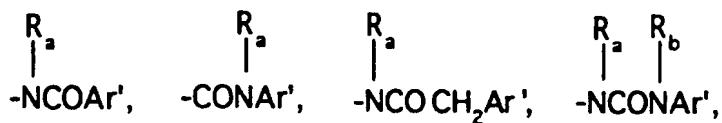
wherein X is selected from O, S, -NH, -NCH<sub>3</sub> and -NCOCH<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>4</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),



5

-SO<sub>2</sub>-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>5</sup> is selected from hydrogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy and halogen; R<sup>6</sup> is selected from (a) moieties of the formulae:

-228-



$-N-C-O$ -lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a \\ || \\ -N-C-O \end{array}$  lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a \\ || \\ -N-C-O \end{array}$  lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

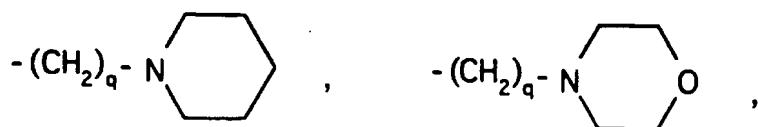
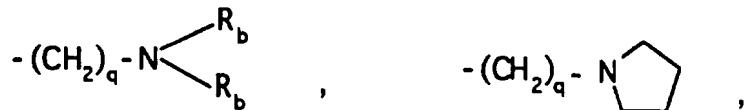
$\begin{array}{c} R_a \\ | \\ R_a \\ || \\ -N-C-O \end{array}$  lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

$-NSO_2$ -lower alkenyl( $C_3-C_8$ ) straight or branched,

wherein cycloalkyl is defined as ( $C_3-C_6$ ) cycloalkyl,

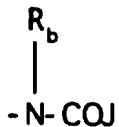
-229-

cyclohexenyl or cyclopentenyl; and Ra is independently selected from hydrogen, -CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,



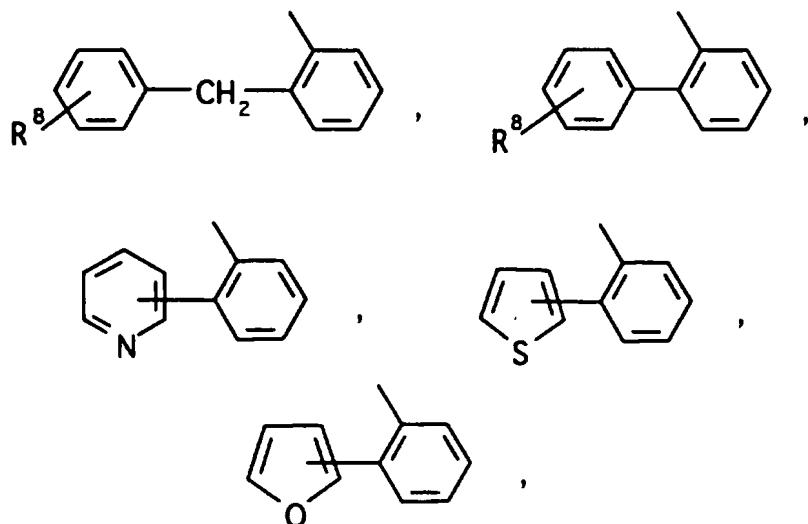
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>OH, q is one, two,  
5 or three, R<sub>b</sub> is independently selected from hydrogen,  
-CH<sub>3</sub> or -C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>,

(b) a moiety of the formula:

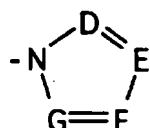


wherein J is Ra, lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or  
10 unbranched, lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched,  
O-lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, -O-lower  
alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>) branched or unbranched, tetrahydrofuran,  
tetrahydrothiophene, and the moieties:

-230-



or -CH<sub>2</sub>-K' wherein K' is (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)-lower alkoxy, halogen, tetrahydrofuran, tetrahydro-thiophene or the heterocyclic ring moiety:



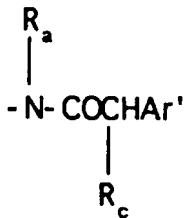
5

wherein D, E, F and G are selected from carbon or nitrogen and wherein the carbon atoms may be optionally substituted with halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkyl, hydroxy, -CO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), CHO, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)lower alkoxy, -CO<sub>2</sub>-

10 lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

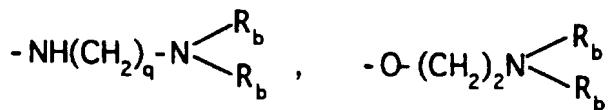
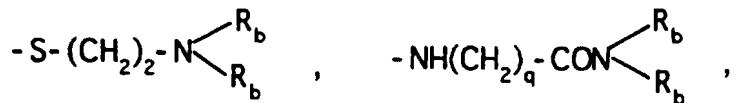
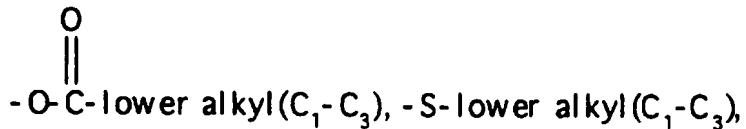
(c) a moiety of the formula:

-231-



wherein  $R_c$  is selected from halogen, (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)

lower alkyl, -O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), OH,



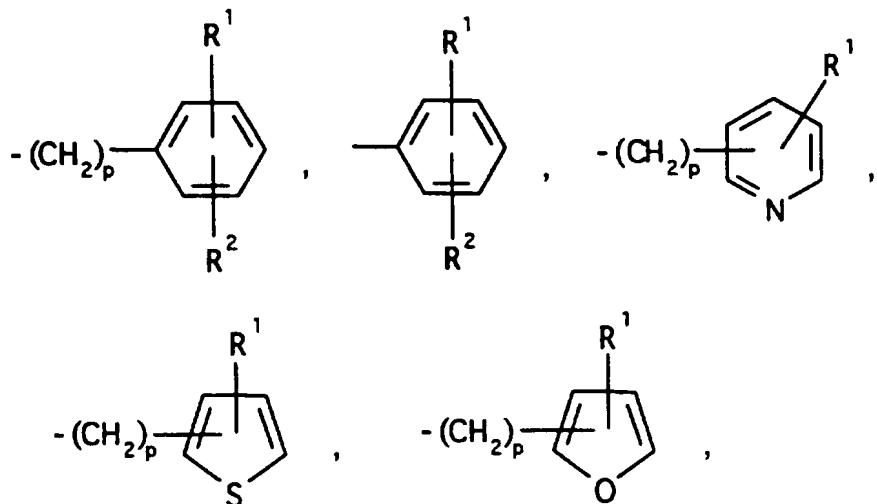
wherein R<sub>a</sub> and R<sub>b</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

(d) a moiety of the formula:



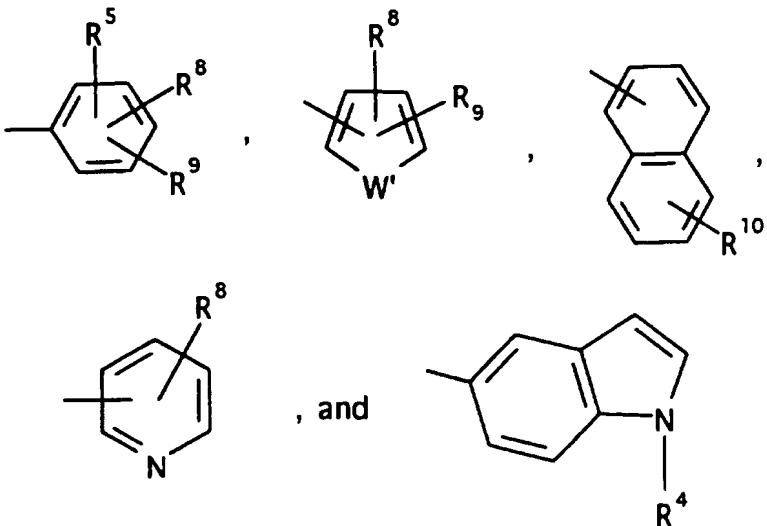
5 wherein R<sub>d</sub> is lower alkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), lower alkenyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>8</sub>), or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>-cycloalkyl(C<sub>3</sub>-C<sub>6</sub>) when M is O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>, and the moiety -M-R<sub>d</sub> wherein R<sub>d</sub> is selected from the moieties:

-232-



wherein p is zero to four and M is a bond or M is selected from O, S, NH, NCH<sub>3</sub>; wherein R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sub>a</sub> are as hereinbefore defined;

5 wherein Ar' is selected from moieties of the formula:

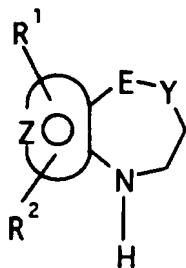


wherein W' is selected from O, S, NH, N-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), and NSO<sub>2</sub>lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); R<sup>7</sup> is selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

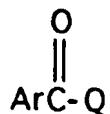
10 halogen, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>) and CF<sub>3</sub>; R<sup>8</sup> and R<sup>9</sup> are independently selected from hydrogen, lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -S-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), halogen, -NH-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>),

-233-

-N-[lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>)]<sub>2</sub>, -OCF<sub>3</sub>, -OH, -CN, -S-CF<sub>3</sub>, -NO<sub>2</sub>,  
 -NH<sub>2</sub>, O-lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), NHCO lower alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -O-  
 CO-lower alkyl (C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>), -N(R<sub>b</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-N(R<sub>b</sub>)<sub>2</sub> and CF<sub>3</sub> and;  
 R<sup>10</sup> is selected from hydrogen, halogen and lower  
 5 alkyl(C<sub>1</sub>-C<sub>3</sub>); which comprises reacting a compound of the  
 formula:



with a compound of the formula:



10 wherein Q is a halogen or an activating group, which  
 results from conversion of an aryl carboxylic acid to an  
 acid chloride, mixed anhydride or from activation with a  
 peptide coupling reagent to give compounds of the Formula  
 I.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/US 96/01096

**A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER**  
**IPC 6** C07D495/04 C07D487/04 C07D471/04 A61K31/55 C07D513/04  
 // (C07D495/04, 333:00, 223:00), (C07D487/04, 237:00, 223:00),  
 (C07D471/04, 223:00, 221:00), (C07D513/04, 281:00, 221:00)

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
**IPC 6** C07D A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	EP,A,0 620 216 (FUJISAWA) 19 October 1994 cited in the application see claim 1	1
A	EP,A,0 620 003 (OTSUKA) 19 October 1994 see claim 1	1

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
- "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

24 May 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

-4.06.96

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.  
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Voyiazoglou, D

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 96/01096

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)		Publication date
EP-A-620216	19-10-94	AU-B-	5932294	20-10-94
		CA-A-	2121112	14-10-94
		CN-A-	1098406	08-02-95
		HU-A-	70197	28-09-95
		JP-A-	7002800	06-01-95
		ZA-A-	9402325	16-02-95
EP-A-620003	19-10-94	AU-B-	663628	12-10-95
		AU-B-	5161493	09-05-94
		CA-A-	2124696	28-04-94
		CN-A-	1098716	15-02-95
		WO-A-	9408582	28-04-94
		JP-A-	6211800	02-08-94